

**Intruccion**  
ons and orders Militarie; requisit for all  
*Chieftaines, Captaines, and higher and lower*  
men of charge, to vnder-  
stand, know, and obserue.

Composed by sir *John Smythe*: knight, 1591.  
And now first Imprinted. 1594.



Imprinted at London, by Richard  
*Jobnes*: dwelling at the signe of *Rose and*  
Crowne, neer to *Saint Andrews*  
church in Holborne, 1594.

*Am. p. 348. W. p. 1047. 104*





# To the Knights, Esquiers, and Gentlemen of the English Nation, that are honourably delighted in the Art and Science Militarie.



**T**H E chiefe cause and principall end of the first asociation of men dispersed, from a solitary sauage life, into Citties, Common wealths, or other ciuill societies, was, that by meanes thereof they might enioy a certain cōmon good, tranquility, & happines, wher vnto al humane kind (how barbarous soeuer) is naturallie inclined; and the speciall waies or meanes to preserue and continue those ciuil societies thus assembled & united, in their desired quiet prosperous estate, and to defend them from the vnnatural rapines, violence and oppressions, of their domesticall wicked neighbors, and from the incursions and inuasions of forren Enemies, is Religion, pollicie, and discipline militarie.

Li. 4. de legib.

Li. 1. de Repub.

Religion saith Plato, is the foundation of al Cōmon wealths, and of humane societie; execution of good lawes, and administration of Iustice, (which is rightly to be called pollicie) is the fountaine of felicitie: And the exercise of Armes and of the Art and discipline militarie, is the maintainer of peace, and ground of securitie; without these and euery one of these, no kingdome can continue, and the Common wealth where they are with good order established, doth prosper and flourish: For ouerpassing the commoditie and necessitie of Religion and pollicie, to be dilated of by Diuines and states-men, as more agreeable to their profession, and impertinent to my present purpose: Concerning the Art and science Militarie, thus may I boldly & trulie write and affirme: that by the exercise thereof all Empires, kingdomes, and Common wealths haue come to their heighth and soueraintie, and haue maintained their happy state and prosperitie; And by neglecting the same, they haue declined, decayed, and finally been made praies to their Enemies.

The Art Militarie it was, that established the Empires  
A. 3. of

## The Epistle.

of the Egyptians, Assirians, Medes, Persians, & Grecians; and that enlarged the dominions of the Romans to so wonderful greatnesse: This Art it was, by the which great Alexander with a handful of souldiors (as they may be termed) did vanquish infinit Armies, and did conquer a great part of the world, and beyond the hope & expectation of al men, did march vnto the v. most parts of the Earth then known; And the neglecting thereof againe, hath beene the decay and ruine both of those and many other most noble Empires and Kingdomes, and hath caused the losse of all Greece, and a great part of the Romaine Empire; and without the great grace & especiall goodnesse of Almighty God, wil be the ruine of the rest. By men of Warre (saith Aristotle) Common wealths are conserued, and that the Art Militarie should be alwaies practised in any well ordered kingdome, it is both profitable and necessarie: which Gelon king of Scicilie wel knowing and considering, & that people vnpractised in Armes through idlenesse and want of experience incur danger to be subdued; He caused often in his kingdome rumors of warres, and inuasions of Enemies to be raised, and thereupon made present preparation of resistance, leuied souldiors, trained and exercised them in al points of militarie discipline, and led them foorth in warlike order some certen daies march, towards the sea coast, as though hee intended presentlie to giue battle to his enemies inuading; but his souldiors expecting the enemies, and when they should fight, he employed them in certaine labors and trauailes, such as he thought conuenient, saying, that in performing the same, they should both ouercome sloth and Idlenesse, two mortal Enemies of the common wealth; and that their enemies besides, vnderstanding how they were void of Idlenesse, and exercised in Armes, would neuer haue the boldnesse to inuade them.

The like prouident care haue diuers other noble kings, Emperors and gouernors of Common wealthes had, for the continual exercise of their people in matters militarie, both for the continuance of their owne estates, and to the terror of their enemies vpon iust occasions of iniuries offred. But seeing at this present day the contrarie, and that the auncient and true know-



## Dedicatorie.

knowledge of discipline militarie is in most parts of Christendome by ciuil Warres corrupted and greatly decaied, I, for the benefit of my Countrie and Nation, wherevnto I wish al prosperitie and happinesse, and for the commoditie of you Gentlemen, vnto whom matters and affaires of Armes, and also of Iustice, do most properlie appertaine, haue with some labour and pains, collected and set downe in this treatise, Certen orders, instructions, and obseruations Militarie, the most of which in seruices of diuers warres vnder notable Captaines, of diuers Nations I haue seen practised, & the rest by reading of diuers histories, I haue other wise obserued: giuing you therewithal to vnderstand, that my intent & purpose is not to treat in this booke generally of all matters militarie by lande which are infinite; for I handle not therein the approching & and besieging of Citties, and places fortified, nor the forming and fortifying of Campes, nor the lodging and dislodging of armies, nor the making of Bridges ouer riuers to passe ouer Armies, nor infinite other matters and stratagems militarie: Al which (some at one time, and some at another) haue beene very wel written off by many principall Captaines and gentlemen of diuers Nations, and some of them also handled by me in some other Books of mine that I haue composed, which I haue not as yet put in print.

But in this booke I haue begun and chieflie handled (as the Reader may see) the reducing of footmen and horsemen into their simple and single order of rankes from point to point, and after how to reduce them into many forms of troupes, squadros, & battles in the field, & that (chieflie) to the intent to enter into skirmish & to giue battle with the most aduantage, which of al other matters military are of greatest importance, to work the highest effects in the field, by reason that thereby great victories are atchieued, and sometimes Empires, Kingdomes and dominions conquered: And for most of al those matters that I haue writen of, I haue alledged manie reasons to fortifie and prooue the same: All which notwithstanding, I doubt not, but that in reading and perusing of this my treatise, in this malicious time, there will bee some found cast in the mould of that good fellow, who going to another mans house, vsed to carrie

## The Epistle.

rie both his eies in his head, and returning home to his owne, put them up in his pocket; Many I meane that will find fault, for one that will commend: and some (as saint Ierome writeth upon the like occasion) that wil curiously search and sift euery sentence, clause, word and sillable, yea and the very letters of my writing, and then censure both my worke and my selfe according to their Mydaslie iudgement; But as Pindarus answered a king of Sparta, it is one of the easiest things in the world to find fault. Sed ecquid habent melius? let them beware least in passing aboue the slipper, and in correcting the shadowes of Apelles picture, the boies that grinde collours laugh them not to scorne, who so long as they hold their peace thinke them by their gaie and golden garmentes to be goodlie fellows.

But leauing enuie to worke upon hir owne intrailles, & setting light of the malice of detractors, to you the honourable gentlemen of my Countrey, for whose good I composed and imprinted these discourses, and to whom with a sincere affection & deuotion I comend and present it; I say and protest that if it may find at your handes that fauorable acceptance and friendlie allowance that I expect it shall, and worke withal that desired effect that I hope it will; I shal esteeme my labours and trauels well imploied, and my selfe for the same euerie waies abundantlie satisfied. From my house at Badewe in Essex this first of May. 1594.

Your louing friend  
Io. Smithe.

# *The Table of the chiefe matters that are contained in this Booke.*

<b>H</b> ow Captaines and their officers aswell of horsemen as of footemen should reduce their bands into their simple & single order of ranks, with diuers aduertisements concerning the same.	pag. 3.
How the Captaines and officers are to teach their piquers to shoulder their piques,	pag. 5
How piquers should be taught by their captains and officers to aduance their piques and make a stand.	page 9
How all the piquers of a single band or Squadron should carie all their piques vpon their right shoulder and not vpon their left.	page 10.
How to forme a single band of 5. different sorts of weapons to march in the fieldes.	page 11
How Captains marching in their single order of rankes should double or triple all their rankes by right line, or increase them by flankes, with diuers other particularities.	pag 13.
Where the ensignebearer, drömers, and phifers of a single band marching in their single order of rankes, are to be placed.	pa. 18
How Ensignebearers ought to carrie their ensignes marching through a great Cittie or Towne.	pa. 19.
How Ensignebearers should be armed.	pa. 19.
Certainne particularities concerning a deputie Ensignebearer.	pa. 20
How Sergeants of bands should be armed and weaponed.	pa. 20
Vpon what licence a priuate band or Squadron of horsemen and footmen being reduced into any forme, are to disorder and breake their rankes to go into their quarters to lodge.	pa. 22
How soldiors are to be taught by their Captains and officers to vpright their piques.	pa. 22
How piquers are to bee instructed by their Captains and officers to charge or receaue a charge of an other Squadron of piquers.	pa. 23
How piquers should resist a charge of launcets.	pa. 28
How piquers should receaue a charge of launces in case the Sergeant Maior or Captaines should thinke good to place any weapones of volce before them,	pa. 29
In what sort harquebuziers or mosquetiers are to discharge their peeces from vnder a Squadron of piques.	pag. 29
A contrarie opinion to Monsieur de le Nouë.	pag. 32
How Captaines should cause their souldiors to make of flanke, or of backe frunt,	pag. 35
The different waies and orders that are to bee vsed by Coronels or Sergeant Maiors to forme Squadrons al of piquers double as broad, or a third part broader in frunt than by flankes.	pag 36
How a Sergeant Maior hauing reduced his Squadron into forme should vpon any occasion, make it broader in frunt, and shorter by flankes,	pag. 42
Diuers waies and meanes for a Sergeant maior to place any ouerplus of broken rankes in.	pag. 42
How a Lord Marshal or Sergeant Maior their Squadron beeing in fight should draw	



## The Table.

draw vp a flecue of piquers to assaile their enemies in flanke.	pag. 43
The Squadron being formed, how a Sergeant Major shoulde make of either of the flanks frunt, obseruing the same proportion in frunt & number of ranks by flanks, that they were before he made of flanke frunt.	pag. 44
The order that is to be taken by a Coronel, if his Squadron accompanied with fleeces, wings, and troupes of weapons of volec, should happen in their march to come to a straight, how they should march, and passe through the same.	pag. 47
Where the Drommers and phifers are to bee placed, the Squadron marching forwards in the enemies Countrie, the enemy being not in sight, as also vpon the doubt of battle.	pag. 50
Wherevpon the Squadron formed and marching forward, the field peeces are to be placed and drawne.	pag. 54
Where the field peeces with their munitions are to be placed in marching thorough a straight.	pag. 55
Concerning the most conuenient and sure placing of the cariages and baggages in passing through a straight.	pag. 56
How to form a Squadron of piquers iust square in number of men both by frunt and flanks, with diuers particularities concerning the same.	pag. 57
How a sergeant maior hauing formed a iust square may vpon any occasion shorten the same by flanke, and enlarge them in frunt.	pag. 59
How a Squadron of halbardes enuironed about with 5. ranks of piquers should be reduced into forme.	pag. 63
How to reduce an English armie of 28000. or 30000. horsemen and footmen into forme of battle, readie in all points to fight with the enemy.	pag. 65
The placing of the seuerall battles of the Armie.	pag. 67
Vpon what parts of the Squadrons, the men at Armes, Dimilaunces, Stradiors, Archers and Crosbowers on horsebacke are to be placed.	pag. 71
How and where to arme the battels with field peeces.	pag. 74
How all the Cariages and baggages of the Armie should be placed in forme of a semicircle, to guard the backe and Rereward of the whole Armie.	pag. 79
Where to reduce, appoint, and place the pioners of the whole Armie.	pag. 81
Certen reasons alledged to prooue that a puissant Armie that dooth consist of many thousands of armed footmen, is of greater force being reduced into 5. 6. 7. or 8. battles, then only into 3. great battles of vaunguard, battle and Reregard, according to the common vse.	pag. 86
The great aduauntages of a Squadron of battleaxes, enuironed about with 5. ranks of piquers, against a Squadron consisting altogether of piquers.	pag. 91
How to reduce and forme a battle of necessitie or extremitie, betwixt 4. or 8. piques placed in square.	pag. 99
Diuers causes and reasons to prooue that great bands of 500. vnder an ensigne, are more conuenient for all seruices in the fiede, then smal bands of 150.	pag. 100
An Example to prooue that great bands of footmen, are more requisite then small.	pag. 104
Concerning Ensignes and Ensignebearers of priuate bandes and Squadrons, of footmen, as also concerning the Standard, and Standardbearer of an Emperour, or of a king.	pag. 128
Certen orders, directions, and brieue speeches to be vsed vnto harquebuziers, piquers,	

## *The Table.*

<b>piquers, and battleaxes, when they are in skirmish with their enemies in the field.</b>	pag. 133
<b>Briefe speeches to be vsed by Captaines or leaders of harquebuziers when they would reduce them into a broad square with distaunces oblique.</b>	pag. 145
<b>Speeches to be vsed to a broad square, or to any ordered troupe of harquebuziers being in a straight or ground of aduantage where horsemen cannot charge them.</b>	pag. 146
<b>Briefe speeches to be vsed to mosquetiers being in a broad square.</b>	pag. 147
<b>Certen orders, directions and briefe speeches to be obserued by a Sergeant maior, and Captaines, and leaders of archers in the field.</b>	pag. 150
<b>A comparison betwixt Archers and mosquetiers, and archers and harquebuziers.</b>	pag. 154
<b>A comparison betwixt harquebuziers and mosquetiers.</b>	pag. 155
<b>Instructions to be giuen by captaines and officers to their bandes for the passing of any briefe speeches or word,</b>	pag. 157
<b>The dutie of trompettors and drummers.</b>	pag. 158
<b>Certen instructions and obseruations concerning the ordering and exercising of men at Armes, of dimilaunces, and also of light horsemen Stradiots, incorporated with archers and Crosbowers on horsebacke, for diuers purposes and seruices.</b>	pag. 159
<b>Why launces are rather to be reduced into Squadron then into troupe.</b>	pag. 165
<b>How and in what distaunces men at Armes or dimilaunces, are to charge or receiue a charge of their enemies.</b>	pag. 167
<b>Diuers exercises for horsemen to be instructed and taught.</b>	pag. 168
<b>Into what formes light horsemen borderers or Stradiots, are to reduce themselves, with the waies how they should be reduced into the forme of a semicircle.</b>	pag. 171
<b>How stradiots, archers on horseback, and Crosbowers on horseback incorporated in bands, are to behaue themselves in the field.</b>	pag. 174
<b>Certen proceedings and obseruations that I would wish to bee obserued in the first election, enrolling, arming and weaponing of souldiours for the defence of the Realme.</b>	pag. 179
<b>Three principal thinges to be obserued in al right and true elections of souldiours.</b>	pag. 180
<b>Concerning the election, apparelling, arming, and weaponing of all sortes of footmen.</b>	pag. 187
<b>How all sortes of horsemen should be apparelled, armed, horsed, and weaponed.</b>	pag. 198
<b>Of what calling the mustermaisters of euery shiere should be.</b>	pag. 205
<b>The curious order that al mustermaisters are to vse in mustering of their bandes of horsemen.</b>	pag. 206
<b>The order that is to be vsed for the supplying of souldiours maimed or miseducued, or otherwaies decayed, or departing from their habitation into some other Towne or hundred or out of their masters seruice.</b>	pag. 210
<b>The different placing of the souldiours armors and weapons in all the shires of England, with the Authors opinion where he would haue them placed, and certain other necessarie aduertisements.</b>	pag. 211
<b>Where and how souldiours that are inrolled to any kind of weapon ought to exercise themselves.</b>	pag. 217
<b>The cause wherefore the Author hath composed this Booke.</b>	pag. 210

*marked in  
some copies.*

Faults happened in the printing of this Booke, by reason  
~~that for John Smythe was absent from London at the~~  
~~time of the imprinting thereof,~~ And they are to be cor-  
rected and read, as followeth.

Page.	Line.	
5	23	<del>Put out And march,</del>
7	18	for Armour, read, Armour.
9	32	for, the left feet, read, their left feet.
21	16	for, Captain Lieutenant, read, Captaine or Lieutenant.
31	26	for opinions, read, opinion.
36	31	for, in a rank, read, in ranks,
39	18	for, therein make, read, there make.
43	3	for, which like number, read, which little number.
48	9	for, forpart corner, read, forpart and corner.
48	16	for, fort and weapon, read, sort of weapon.
56	26	for, substance of the powder, read, substance & body of powder
62	11	for, 145. Read, 143.
63	18	for 5, in frunt, read, 50. in frunt.
63	33	for, the flanke, read, the left flanke.
74	1	for, but one kind, read, but of one kind.
87	33	for, that their in encountering, read, that in their encountering.
88		In the margent, for 3000. read, 5000.
93	30	for piquers, read, piques.
94	4	for ranke, read, ranks.
106	27	for flanks, read, flanke.
111	14	for 18000. read, 1800.
126	35	for like, read, little.
134	3	for double, read, doubt.
143	2	for sortes, read, sort.
148	33	for, and without, read, and not without.
150	35	for, narrow or short, read, narrow and short.
156	17	for motions, read, motion.
189	25	for stocks, read, cocks.
194	10	for, the piques of such sagging, read, the points of such sagging
197	29	for septentrionall, Read, septentrionall.
203	16	for, into their bands, read, into bands:
218	3	for, at a great But discharge, read, at a great white in the midst of a great But.





**Certen Instructions, obseruations and  
orders military, requisit for al Chieftains, Captains,  
and higher and lower men of charge, & officers  
to vnderstand, know and obserue. Composed  
by sir Iohn Smythe, knight, 1591.**



**T**HE first thing belonging to the Art and Science Militarie, practised by all Warlike Nations in all ages hath bin, that al Captains after they haue receiued the charge of bands or companies of horsmen or footmen armed & weaponed, according to the discipline and vse of the Nation that they are of; haue first instructed and taught their souldiors to reduce themselues into their simple and single order of ranks, and to weare, carry, and vse all their weapons in soldior-like manner, according to the nature and effect of euery different sort of them, without which readilie and orderlie performed and duly obserued, with all obedience, neyther Captains, officers, nor their soldiors, can in right vnderstanding be accounted worthy to beare the name of men of warre; and therefore I will first begin with the orderlie reducing of a band into forme to march in their ranks as followeth.

All Captaines, Lieutenants, and Sergeants of bands, are first to consider before they do reduce their bands of souldiors into their simple and single order of ranks, how many different sorts of weapons they haue in their bands with the number of euery different sort of weapon; which done, then are they to consider what sort & kind of weapon shall march in the first compertiment or deuision,

Certen matters to be considered of and obserued by all Captaines before y reduce.

ment of their bands into their simple & single order of ranks.

A compertiment of a band of Soldiours, is to bee vnderstood the number of soldiours of any one sort of weapon, as of Harquebuziers, of archers, of musquetiers, of piquers or of halbardiers, reduced into their simple or single order of ranks, as of 3. 4. 5. 6. or 7. & so vppeto 10. or 11. in a rank at the most, readie to be reduced into Squadron, or to be any other waies imploied

Single bandes are not to march aboue 10. or 11. in a ranke at the most for diuers causes and reasons.

and what other sort of weapon in the second compertiment, and so subsequentlie in all the rest; so as alwaies the compertiment of armed men piquers doo march in the midst of all the rest of the compertiments.

All which being by them and their officers considered, then they are to resolute how many souldiers of euery sort of weapon they will command to march in a ranke; as of 5. of 6. or of 7. or more or fewer: so as they be not fewer then 3. nor more then 10. or 11: at the most in their simple and single order of ranks, although their bandes be verie great. And these numbers of 10. or 11. in a ranke at the most, and 3. soldiours in a ranke at the fewest for single bands to march in, hath beene obserued by all men of warre of iudgement amongst all Warlike Nations in all ages; and that in respect that the ranks of souldiers that doe not exceed the number of 10. or 11. may in an instant bee numbred by the Captaines or officers, sudden casting their eies vpon such ranks, as also by the souldiers that are to reduce themselues into their ranks: whereas if they were of greater numbers, the captaine, lieutenant, or sergeants, may quicklie mistake the number of soldiours in ranke, and so to their reproch faile in their intended reducements. Besides that Squadrons how great, and of what forme soeuer they are formed, the compertiments of diuers or many bands, are more conueniently and certeinlie brought into their proportions and formes, with the compertiments of bands that doe not exceed the number of 10. or 11. in a ranke at the vttermost, or rather fewer, then if they were of greater numbers; with other causes and reasons also which for breuities sake in this place I omit. And now all this beeing as aforesaid by a Captaine considered, and he hauing with himselfe concluded that all the compertiments of different weapons throughout his band shall march 5. in a rank, or any other number (as aforesaid:) he is presently to giue order to his officers to reduce them into that num-

number in euerie ranke; which to performe, some one of them is first to saie vnto the harquebuziers who are to be the first compertiment, *Ranke your selues harquebuziers five in a ranke*, appointing them the ground where the soldiors of the first ranke shall reduce themselues; and so likewise the like brieue wordes and orders are to bee pronounced to the Archers, to the Musquetiers, and to the armed men: which being by them heard, euery different sort of those weapons ought with all celeritie to reduce themselues throughout their compertiments into the foresaid number of 5. in a ranke, all the backer ranks of euery compertiment, obseruing the proportionate distances of the two first ranks of their owne compertiment in frunt and by flanks.

But because when soldiors doo begin to reduce themselues into ranks after the number pronounced by their Captains or Sergeants, that in the first, second, or third ranke, or else in some of the rest of the ranks, there happen sometimes more soldiors to fall into some of those ranks, then there should be by the number pronounced, (as aforesaid) and that those soldiors that came last into that ranke or those ranks, are vpon pride or wilfulnesse lothe to put themselues out of that ranke or ranks, and to retire themselues to find out some ranke or ranks that doe lacke the number pronounced: the Captains therefore and the officers of bands ought to instruct their soldiors, at such times as they are to reduce themselues into their simple or single order of ranks, according ynto the number by their Captains or officers pronounced, that if in the first, second, or third ranke; or in any of the rest of the former ranks, that disorder doe happen; that then the ouerplus of the number of the soldiors by the Capitaine or officers pronounced that doe find themselues on the left flanke, or side of that ranke, or ranks, shall presently put themselues out of the same ranke, or ranks, and retire vntill they find a ranke or ranks, that doe lacke the

Certen orders and brieue speeches to be obserued & vsed by Captains & their officers, when they would reduce their bandes into their simple and single order of ranks.

In all reducementes either of horsemen or footmen al the backer ranks must obserue the proportionate distances in frunt and by flanks, of the two foremost ranks.

Two speciall & generall rules to be obserued by all soldiors when they are to reduce themselues into ranks.



This kind of  
reducement of  
a single band  
of horsemen or  
footmen into  
rankes, euery  
soldior by the  
left flanke of  
the other hath  
not bene accor-  
ding to true  
discipline vsed  
by our English  
nation of a  
long tunc.

number of soldiors by their Captain or officers pronoun-  
ced. And to the intent that this order may be the better  
performed, the Capitaines, Lieutenants, and sergeants,  
ought to instruct their soldiors that in the reducing of  
themselues into ranks, the first soldior that is to begin in  
the first ranke, being placed by the Sergeant in the place  
where the first ranke should begin, the rest of the soldiors  
of the same armor and weapon that are next vnto that  
first soldior by the seargeant placed, shall presently fall in-  
to ranke by the left side or flanke the one of th' other, vn-  
till that ranke be compleat according to the number by  
the Captain, Lieutenant, or Sergeant pronounced. And  
so likewise the second, third, fourth, and consequentie al  
the rest of the ranks are to reduce themselues into their  
ranks by the left flankes, or sides the one of the other, and  
not to enter into ranke disorderlie th' one betwixt the o-  
ther. So that by the performance of this prescribed or-  
der, any ouerplus of soldiors that shall happen to fall into  
any of those ranks shall find themselues to be on the left  
flanke or side of those ranks, and therfore shall know that  
it is their duties presently to retire out of those ranks, vn-  
till they find some other ranke or ranks that doo lack the  
number by their Captains or Sergeants pronounced. Al  
which different weapons being reduced into their com-  
partments by the orders aforesaide, then the Captaine  
may command his lieutenant and Sergeants of the band  
to draw the one halfe of euery different sort of weapon of  
volee, behind the compartiment of armed men, & there  
to place them in the same & like order as the other halfe  
of those weapons of volee are before the armed men; so  
as the armed piquers shall hold the middle place of the  
band according to all discipline.

And the like brieue speeches and prescribed orders of  
reducements by the left flanke the one of th' other may  
serue for horsmen, be they men at Armes, Launces, bor-  
derers or Stradiots, or of any other kinde of armor and  
weapon.

weapon on horsebacke. As for example, If a Captaine or Lieutenant of men at Armes, or Dimilances would reduce his companie into their simple or single order of rankes, he is to say vnto those that are to begin the first ranke: *Ranke your selues Launces three in a ranke*, or 4 or 5 in a ranke, or as it shal please him: Vpon which speaches pronounced, all his whole band or companie is to performe his commandement and words pronounced with the like obseruations as are before prescribed vnto the bands of footmen, hauing alwaies speciall regard to their proportionate distances in frunt and by flanks. And these prescribed orders before set downe, al soldiours bee they horsmen or footmen ought to know & performe with all celerity, quietnes, & silence, vpon very seuerer punishment.

Briefe speaches to be vsed by Captains of horsmen when they are to reduce their companies into their simple and single order of rankes.

Now the Captain or Captains hauing reduced their soldiours into their simple, or single order of ranks or into any forme of square, & that the soldiours piquers do stand at their piques, the butends on the ground, and the points vpright, and that the Captain, Lieutenant, or Sergeants would haue them to march, they are then to say to the first ranke: *Shoulder your piques and march*; which is as much to say: Lay your piques vpon your right shoulders ~~and march~~, which shouldering of piques must be doone with a comely and soldiourlike grace, all the piquers of the first ranke falling backe with their right feet almost a foot behind their left, that their piques may the more leisurely and comelie fall to their shoulders, and then raising vp their left feet about a handfull from the ground, & letting them fall againe, they must all in an instant aduance forward, & so fall into their march, first with their right feet. And so in like maner the second, third, and fourth ranks, & so subsequentlie al the rest of the ranks must in al points performe the like, & shoulder their pikes one after another & carry the butends of their piques 3. foot or more from the ground, straight in discent towards the right hams of the souldiours piquers marching before them, euerie

Brief speaches to be vsed by the Captain & his officers to piquers standing at their piques.

How piquers should shoulder their piques and march.

ranke beeing so euen in frunt, that the butend of no piquers pique may preceed the one the other in the same ranke; and so euen and straight by flanks that the butend of euerie piquers pique may be iust point and blanke towards the right hamme of the piquer preceding in the ranke before him: And so they must al with great silence and with a graue and soldiorlike grace, march.

But whereas in this place I doe instruct that all the soldiors of the first ranke, and so subsequentlie of all the rest of the rankes one after another should first fall back with their right feet, almost a foot behind their left, to the intent that their piques should fall the more leisurely to their shoulders, and that then all the soldiors of the first ranke at one instant should raise and lift vp their left feet about a handfull from the ground, and letting them fall againe to the ground should march forward, first with their right feet; that instruction I doe giue partlie in respect that the same being orderlie performed as aforesaid, it dooth giue a very comelie grace vnto the soldiors in their first beginning to march, but chiefelie because that the leisurely falling backe of all the soldiors of the first ranke with their right feet, to shoulder their piques, and so subsequentlie of all the rest of the rankes one after another, with the lifting vp also of their left feet about a hand full from the ground, is a warning to euerie hinder ranke presently to prepare themselves to march, whereas by not performing the same or the like leisurely and soldiorlike warning vpon the stroke of the drum or brieife speeches pronounced as aforesaid, it often commeth to passe that the soldiors of the second ranke, are suddenlie, and disorderly cast too great a distance behind the first ranke, and so consequentlie all the rest of the rankes, by the sudden shouldering of their piques, and stepping forward of the first ranke.

And I doe further aduertise that the soldiors piquers of any private band marching in their single order of rankes  
doe



doe in any wise obserue the distances of 16. or else 18. feet betwixt euerie rank & ranke by flankes, and 6. or else 7. feet betwixt euery soldior, and soldior in frunt; that is betwixt soldior and soldior in euery ranke: And this in case the ground will permit them or otherwise that they do march in conuenient distances in frunt and by flankes, according to the ground and occasion.

Distance to be obserued by piquers marching in their single order of ranks.

And in this place because I haue mentioned and touched the distances that ought to be obserued by a single band of piquers, and other weapons marching in their simple and single order of ranks, I thought it were a conuenient place also to handle and write at large of the many and different distances that ought to be obserued as well in frunt; that is in euery ranke from frunt to backe, as by flankes, that is betwixt euery ranke and ranke, not only by single bands, but also by squadrons and battels for many purposes, and that not onelie by footmen, but also by horsmen of diuers different sortes of armour and weapons. Howbeit considering that the same hath been briefelie touched although to no great purpose by some other writers of forreigne Nations; And that if I should enter to write and discourse of those matters effectuallye, it would require manie sheetes of paper, and therefore would be very long and tedious to the Reader, I thought good to ouerpasse those particularities as thinges very well knowne to all skilfull men of warre of all warlike nations, and to proceed to other matters that doe require more particular instruction. And that the rather, because the many and different distances that are vpon diuers different causes and occasions to be obserued by horsmen as also by footmen, are such and so many as they cannot bee expresseed by writing but with verie great difficultie; for that the same cannot bee particularlye set downe but by the measures of paces and halfe paces, and by the measures of more and fewer feet, of halfe feet and quarters of feet, and other such measures; which I

thinke

That it is a thing of verie great difficulty to set downe by writing all the iust and proportionate distances that Horsmen and footemen are to obserue in frunt and by flankes vpon diuers occasions.

thinke no man of any experience can possibly by writing rightlie expresse without failing or erring more or lesse: And that by reason that sometimes single bandes are to march in open places where they haue roome inough to inlarge their ranks both in frunt and by flankes, thereby to beautifie and giue grace vnto such companies; And at other times they are to march thorow Citties and Townes, where the narrownesse of the streets doe not giue them roome to inlarge themselves in their distances, thereby to make the greater show; at other times also bands are to march in the field readie to be reduced & incorporated with other bands, at which time they are to march more close, & in neerer distances both in frunt and by flankes. And so likewise being incorporated into squadrons, they are for diuers different purposes, as sometimes for their greater ease to march, & to giue the greater show, and to bewtifie the squadron, they are to march in the ranks inlarged; and at other times vpon the expecting of the enimie being not yet in sight, or beeing in sight, they are to straighten their ranks more or lesse; or that vpon the neare approach of the Enemies squadrons of both horfmen and footmen, they expect and doubt a charge of horfmen in frunt, or flankes, or both; or that they themselves are with their piques to charge a contrarie squadron of footmen. For al which, and diuers other occasions and purposes, they are to reforme themselves into diuers different distances.

And as piquers and short weapons either in single bands, or reduced into squadrons, are for diuers purposes to reforme themselves into such varietie of distances: Euen so weapons of vlee reduced into sleeues, wings, and other formes, are to vse some of the like, and other sorts of distances. And as footmen are for such different causes and occasions to obserue such varietie of distances as aforesaid: Euen so horfmen of diuers armors and weapons, as men at Armes, Dimilaunces, Stradiots, Reistres

stres, and other sorts of light horsemen, are to reduce themselves into diuers different distances according to the effects and nature of their armors and weapons; and are again to reforme themselves into other distances according to new occasions and directions, sometimes for one purpose and sometimes for others. All which variety & different sorts of distances and many others are of very great difficulty, to bee by writing rightly expressed in their iust and proportionate measures; and yet y notwithstanding it is a thing of so great facilitie for all good and diligent Captaines and officers aswell of horsemen as of footmen, only by sight of eye and ordinarie practise to instruct and reduce their souldiors vpon any different occasions into all sorts of distances either in Towne, Campe, or field, according to the Art and science Militarie; as that there is not any Captaine, Lieutenant, nor Sergeants of band, that are any waies worthie to haue the charge or mannaging of a band of footemen; nor any Captaine, Lieutenant, Conductor, nor Decurion of horsemen, that are any waies worthy to haue the ordering & mannaging of any sorts of horsemen vnder their charges, if they doo not very well know all different sortes of distances according to discipline, that they are to reduce their souldiors into.

And if the Captaine or officers aforesaid, would haue their souldiors to stay their march and make a stand; then the Captain, Lieutenant, or Sergeant is to say to the first ranke of piquers *Auance your piques*: which words being pronounced, al the souldiors piquers, of the first rank must in an instant lay their left hands vpon the forpart of their piques, about a foot or more before their right hands, auancing themselves forward two steps, the first with their left feet, and the laste steppe with their right feet, and therewithall raising their piques vpright with both their hands, they must set the butends of them vpon the ground with the pointes towards the Element, which being by the first rank performed with a comly & souldiorlik grace;

Brief speeches to be vsed to piquers when they shoulde make a stand or pause.

How piquers should aduance their piques and make a stand.



then the second ranke, the third, fourth & so subsequently all the rest of the ranks one after another, must after the same sort auance their piques.

And whereas it hath beene of long time vsed, and stil is by many Italian, Walloun, and French Captains, and so likewise by some other Capitaines of other Nations, that they doo instruct their soldiors marching in their simple or single order of rankes of 5. or 6. or 7. or other such numbers, as also when they are reduced into squadron, that all the piquers that doo march of the left flank or side of the band or squadron, should carrie all their piques vpon their left shoulders, as y<sup>e</sup> piquers marching vpon the right flanke doo carry theirs vpon their right shoulders; and this to the intent (as they say) that the piquers of the left flanke or side of the band or squadron carrying their piques vpon their left shoulders, doo in the same carrying of their piques, greatly beautifie the band or squadron in the eies of the beholders: whereas, if otherwise all the piquers of the left flank should carrie their piques vpon their right shoulders, as those of the right flanke doo, that it would not make so good a shew, as by carrying their piques vpon their left shoulders: Therunto I say, that I haue knowne diuers Italians, and namelie *Marco Antonio Colōna, Ascanio de la Corna, & Chapin Vitelli*: all which three were very notable gentlemen and great Captains, that did greatlie mislike that the piquers of the left flanke of a band or squadron, should carry their piques vpon their left shoulders, vtterly condemning the cause before alledged: saying, that the left flank or side of piquers marching in their simple, or single order of ranks, or in squadron, could not be more bewtified, then by the wearing of their swords vpon their left sides, and their piques vpon their right shoulders in soldiorlike manner: besides that for right handed soldiors to carrie their piques vpon their left shoulders when they are to aduance, or vpright, or shoulder their piques, it dooth giue a greater disequalitie and disgrace in the performance

No piquers of a single band or squadron ought to carie their piques vpon their left shoulders.

mance of those and diuers other effects; and therewithal is a great deale more vnready for right handed souldiors, for diuers other purposes to performe and vse; then if they carried al their piques after one sort vpon their right shoulders. And as the opinions of diuers Captaines are as aforesaid, that the carrying of their piques vpon their left shoulders doth bewtifie the left flanke, because it dooth resemble the right: So contrariwise, I say that such as doo behold either the frunt or the backe of such a band or Squadron, shall see a disproportion and disequalitie in the partition where the piquers of the left flank do carry their piques in a different sort from al the rest of the piquers of the right flanke. For all which causes before alledged, with others, which for breuities sake I omit; I would wish that all piquers should aswell in squadrons as in their single order of rankes, carry all their piques vpon their right shoulders, & not vpon their left; except some times when they are in march in the field to ease themselves, they may change their piques to their left shoulders.

Also if there were any piquers that were left handed from their youth, I wold wish them to carrie their piques vpon their right shoulders, and to practise and vse their piques with their right hands, in couching and making head with them against either horsmen or footmen, and in all other militarie exercises and actions. And because such left handed soldiors doo weare their swordes vpon their right sides, I would wish that they should not be placed neither in single bandes, nor in squadrons, vpon the vttermost flanks or sides of them, but in some other of the inner ranks.

And here it is to be noted that in reducing of a single band or companie of soldiors into their simple, or single order, the Captain, Lieutenant, or Sergeants of the band, must haue great consideration in forming of their bands; and chiefly consisting as our English bands doe of 5. different weapons; that is, of piques, barleaxes, musquetiers, harque-  
How a single band consisting of 5 different sortes of weapons should be formed to march in the plaine and open fields.

A great advantage and readines for bands marching in this sort, to be reduced into other formes.

harquebuziers, and archers; and that they ought to performe in this sort following: First that they should place the one halfe of the harquebuziers in frunt; and immediate after them, should march the one halfe of the archers, and after the archers, the one halfe of the musquetiers, and after the musquetiers, al the ranks of the piquers with the Ensigne in the midst or centre of them, guarded with halbarders, or battleaxers; and after the piquers the other halfe of the musquetiers, and after the musquetiers the other half of the archers, and after them last of al the other halfe of the harquebuziers; which band marching in this sort, the one half of the different sorts of weapons of volec marching before the piques, and the other halfe behind, both in like numbers of ranks & in one order, they are by that means alwaies ready vpon all occasions to be reduced into any forme, or different forms to arme aswell the back of the piquers by some called Rereward, as also the frunt, flanks, & al four corners of the said piques: as for example, If the Captain of the band be disposed to arme, and draw two fleeces of any one sort of those weapons of volec by the flanks of the armed men, he may then with great celerity perform the same, either by cōmanding by the stroke of the drum, or by som brieve speech, that al the piquers and short wepons shal aduance their piques and make a stand, and hauing reduced those armed men into som kind of square, then one of the Sergeants of the band is to draw down al the ranks of that weapon of volec, that he would make his fleecie of, vpon the right flanke of the piques in as many ranks as he listeth, and as many soldiours in euery rank as pleaseth him, or as he is cōmanded; & so likewise at the same time & instant another sergeant, or the Lieutenant of the band (which Lieutenant ought euer to march behind the hindermost ranke of the band in case the Captain do march before) may draw vp by the left flank of the piques the like number of ranks, & of soldiours in euery rank of the same weapon of volec; and so likewise with the like celerity vpon the different strokes of the drum, or different brieve speeches of the Captain, all the



the rest of the different sorts of weapons of vlee by drawing down as many ranks of them that doo march before as he thinketh requisit, and drawing vp as many ranks of those that do march behind or in rereward as he thinketh meet; and employing the rest for skirmishes, or ambushes, or other seruices as he thinketh most conuenient; they may with great dexteritie reduce them into diuers different and variety of forms, as well for the guard of the frunt and back of the piques, as for the flanks & corners, and all other occasions and purposes.

Also it is further to be noted that if a Captain, marching with his band in his simple or single order of 3. of 4. or 5. or more in a rank; & that vpon any occasion he thinketh requisit to double all the ranks of the compertiments of his band by right line: that is by euery second ranke entering into the ranke that is before them; then he is to say to the sergeant or sergeants of his band, *Double your ranks by right line*: vpon which briefe words and directions, the sergeant presently ought to command the drummer or drummers to strike the doubling of the ranks; or else himself is to command the second rank of piquers to enter into y first rank of piquers, & at the same instant the fourth rank to enter into y third rank, and the sixt into the fift rank, & so subsequently in the like order, all the rest of the ranks to enter one into another; so as if they were before but 5. in a rank in their single order, they are nowe by this doubling of ranks by right line becom 10. in a rank. And as a captain may double the ranks of y compertiments of his band, by right line as aforesaid, so may he likewise double them by any of both y flanks by cōmanding euery second rank to march vp to the left flank of the rank before them, that is, that the second rank of 5. soldiours do march vp to the left flank of the first rank of 5. and that the fourth ranke doo at the same time march vppe to the left flanke of the third ranke, and the sixt ranke to the left flanke of the fift ranke, and so subsequentlie all the rest of the second ranks throughout the bande to marche vppe to the left flanks of the ranks before them, vntill they

How Captains marching with their bandes in their simple and single order of ranks should double all their ranks by right line.

How Captains should double the ir ranks by flanks.

How Captains  
should triple  
their ranks  
by right line.

How Captains  
should triple  
their ranks  
by flanks,

It is to be noted that in all  
reduements  
of squadrons  
into forme  
with the com-  
partiments of  
bands, that the  
middlemost  
part of the  
frunte is the  
highest place  
in estimation,  
and that the  
right hand of  
the same frunt  
is the second  
in degree, and  
that the left

be of equall frunt & in equall distances with the said ranks before them. And further, if the captain of the same band his cōpany marching in their simple & single order of 5. in a rank as they did at y first be disposed to haue two rāks to enter into one, that is whereas they marched before 5. in a ranke to make them 15. then hee is to say to the Sergeants of his band: *Triple your ranks by right line*, which brieve words by the Captain being pronounced, then the Sergeants presentlie are to command the drommers to strike the tripling of the rankes, or else themselues with the like brieve speeches as aforesaid, to cause the second and third ranks of any weapon to enter into the first ranke of the same weapon, and the fift and the sixt, to enter into the fourth, and the eigth and the ninth to enter into the seuenth, and so subsequentlie all the rest of the rankes orderly to performe the like, which being by them performed, they must presentlie in euery ranke inlarge themselves in their distances. And to the same effect, If a Captain be disposed to triple the rankes of the armed men of his band by flanks; that is, whereas they marched before but 5. in euery ranke in their single order, that he would reduce them into 15. in euery ranke, then he or his Lieutenant, or the Sergeants of his band may commaund the tripling of the ranks by saying to the first rankes. *Triple your ranks soldiors by both the flanks throughout*. Vppon which brieve speeches pronounced either by the Captain, Lieutenant, or Sergeants, the second & third ranks are presentlie to march vp to the flanks of the first ranke, that is to be vnderstood, that the second ranke shall march to the right flanke of the first ranke, and the third ranke to the left flanke of the said first ranke, vntil they be al of one equall frunt, and in like and equall distances; at which time likewise the fift and sixt ranks shall in the very same order and sort march vp to both the flanks of the fourth ranke, and the eigth and the ninth ranks shall march vp to both the flanks of the seuenth ranke, and so subsequentlie all the rest of the ranks that are of any one sort of weapon

pon shall march vp to both the flanks of the ranks of the like sort of weapon before them : so as of 5. that euerie rank did at the first consist in their simple and single order they are now by this trypling of rankes by both the flanks as aforesaid reduced, to be .15. in euerie ranke throughout . But because by this kinde of trypling of rankes, as also in trypling of them by right lyne, the fourth ranke is now become to be the second ranke, and the seuenth the third ranke, and so subsequently in the rest, and that therfore euerie one of those rankes are too great a distance by flanke the one from the other, they must euerie ranke presently vpon their first trypling performed, march vp vntill they finde themselves in such convenient distances and nearenes by flanks one ranke to another, as the Captaine, Lieutenant or Seargeants shall thinke requisite.

hand  
same frunt is  
the lowest  
place in de-  
gree. And that  
the first, second  
and thirde  
rankes, but  
chiefely the  
first, are the  
places of grea-  
test estimation  
for the gentle-  
men of the  
bands if there  
be any to bee  
placed in the  
presence of  
their Captains  
to shewe their  
valours.

But here it is to be noted that in case the last ranke or the two last rankes shall by this kinde of trypling and reducing by flanks as aforesaid, lacke a third ranke before them to reduce themselves vnto, by flanks, then the formost of the two last rankes shall marche vp by the right flanke of the piquers, vntill they come to the middle place whereas the Ensignebearer with his Ensigne doth stand, and there shall ranke and place themselves on the right hand of the Ensignebearer. At which present time likewise, the last ranke of the other .5. piquers shall march vp by the lefte flanke of the armed men vntill they come to the foresaid middle place where the Ensignebearer with his Ensigne doth stand, and there shall ranke and place themselves on the left flanke of the Ensignebearer. And this is to be performed, by reason that it is not sufferable according to discipline that any broken ranke of a squadron of piquers, or of any other weapon of disequall number to the rest of the rankes should so march either in frunt or backe. Howbeit the Captaine before he commandeth the trypling of the rankes as aforesaid, ought well to consider of the number of the

How & where  
any ouerplus  
or broken  
rankes of pi-  
quers should  
place them-  
selues.

It is contrary  
to discipline  
that any ranke  
of disequall  
number to the  
rest of the  
rankes should  
march either  
in frunt or  
backe.

rankes



How Captains  
hauing by tri-  
pling their  
rankes brought  
their bandes  
into disproportion,  
may and  
ought to reme-  
die the same.

Another speci-  
all point to be  
lookt vnto by  
Captaines in  
doubling or  
tripling their  
rankes by right  
line or encreas-  
sing them by  
flankes

rankes that he hath or meaneth to triple, to the intent to bring them into a conuenient and proportionate forme, aswell by flankes as frunte, which proportionate forme is not only intended in respect of the distances by frunt and flankes as aforesaid, but that there be not more rankes by flankes then there be soldiors in euerie ranke, which would cause being piquers, the square or squadron to be a great deaie longer by flanke, considering their different distances, then broade in frunt, which in all discipline in forming of squares, or squadrons is a great disproportion; vnlesse that the Captaine vpon some occasion or accident were disposed to make of flanke, frunt, that is to make all the soldiors to turne their faces and weapons that waies. Howbeit if the Captaine by the tripling of his rankes as aforesaid, should find that he had not brought them into that proportion and forme that he ought according to discipline to do; that is to make the frunt full as broad as the flankes are long, or broader to any conuenient proportion then the flankes are longe; then he may easely remedie the same by increasing all the rankes by flankes sauing the hindermost ranke, (which by such encraesment of ranks commeth to lacke number), to as conuenient bredth and length by frunt and flankes, as he thinketh meete; which order of increasing of rankes by flankes, I haue alreadie before sette downe. And as the Captaine may double or triple the rankes as aforesaid; so he may likewise vpon good consideration and cause quadruple them; that is to make euerie .3. rankes to enter into the fourth ranke, obseruing and proceeding in performance thereof in the like sort and order as is before declared.

But in the performance of this before set downe, the Captaine and his officers, are further to consider that in that doubling of rankes by right line, or encreasing them by flankes, they must take heed that they do not confuse or confound their rankes, by making two sorts of weapons to enter into any one rancke; as to make any piquer

to

to enter into any rank of halbarders, or any harquebuzier into any rank of archers, or any archers to enter into any ranke of musquetiers, nor yet any harquebuziers at any time to enter into any rank of musquetiers, although they be both weapons of fire, because that to mingle two sorts of weapons of different force and qualitie in one rank, it is a great scorne and contrarie to al true discipline. But now if any man will aske the causes wherfore in reducing this band of 5. sorts of weapons into their simple & single order of 4. 5. or 6. in a rank, I placed the harquebuziers foremost, and the archers betwixt them and the mosquetiers, and the musquetiers next vnto the piquers. Therevnto I answer, and say that the causes and reasons that haue moued me so to doe, are, that harquebuziers in respect of the lightnesse of their weapon and furniture, are of al other weapons of vlee most readie and apt to bee imploied in skirmish, or vpon any aduantage of ground to bee placed vpon the sudden in ambush, where they may lie close & ready vpon diuers opportunities to giue a sudden vlee, or diuers vleees deuided either at horsemen or footmen. But I would alwaies vpon the employing of them in such actions, that they should be backt with some number of halbarders lightlie armed, as also vpon some occasions with some piques for diuers causes & reasons that heereafter shall appeare. And as for the archers I haue placed them betwixt the harquebuziers and musquetiers, partlie to make a separation & distinction of those weapons of fire, the one of greater length & heueth, and in effect of greater violence in further distance; and the other, I meane harquebuzes, shorter and lighter, and to be emploid most commonlie in the first seruices; but chieffie, in consideration that neither the archers nor the musquetiers are to depart from the bodie of the piques, but are to bee reduced into heafes, or into greater or smaller formed troups; as also for such other effectes, and purposes as in certen places of this booke heereafter shall appeare: and so likewise the reasons wherfore I haue placed the harquebuziers, archers, and musquetiers in the same number and

The causes and reasons why in reducing this band into their simple & single order of ranks, euery sort of weapon is placed in the order aforesaid.

Harquebuziers employed in skirmish or for ambushes or som other like causes ought to be backt with halbards.

Archers and musquetiers are not to depart from the bodie of the squadron.

order as well behind the body of the piques, as before in frunt, are as well in respect of the ready drawing of them vpp into sleeves, and other formes, by the flankes of the piques as aforesaid; as also that vpon some accidents or comming of the enemy, it sometime hapneth that the bodie of the piques reduced into square may happen to bee forced to make of backe frunt: vppon which and diuers other occasions and accidentes the body of the piquers haue alwaies in a readinesse as many of all sortes of weapons of vlee behind them to bee any waies employed with al celeritie as in frunt before.

Where the  
Drommers &  
Phifers of a sin-  
gle bande mar-  
ching in their  
single order of  
rankes ought  
to be placed.

And heere it is furdere to be noted, that a single band marching in their simple and single order, ought to place their drummers and phifers: one drumme and phifer betwixt the second and third ranke in frunt, and the other drummer and phifer (in case they haue two phifers which few bands haue) in the midst of the band directly before the Ensigne bearer; and in case that the band bee so great that there are three drummers, (which is but seldome seene) then the third drummer is to bee placed betwixt the second and third of the hindermost rankes. But because most great bands haue but two drummers and one phifer, those two drummers are to be placed, the one betwixt the second and third ranke in frunt as aforesaid, and the other drummer with the phifer in the midst of the band before the Ensigne bearer: But in case there bee but one drummer and one phifer, then they are to be placed in the midst of the band before the Ensigne bearer, as aforesaid, and not betwixt the fore rankes of the band; although I haue seene when there hath been but one drum and one phifer, that they haue not marched before the

Where the En-  
signe bearer is  
alwaies placed.

The pique the  
most honoura-  
ble weapon for  
soldiers on  
foote.

Ensigne bearer, but in the frunt as aforesaid. And this I haue seene vsed by some Italians after the one sort, and by other Italians of other parts and dominions of Italie, after the other sort. But because the Ensigne bearer doth alwaies march in the midst of the piques accompanied with halbarders; and that the piques being the most honorable weapon in respect that they are for the bodie of



the square, do march in the midst betwixt the weapons of vlee; I would in consideration thereof, as also to the intent that the different directions of the strokes of the drumme may be the more easilie heard throughout the whole band, place the drummer and phifer (if there were no more but one in the band) in the midst before the Ensigne bearer, and not amongst the shot in frunt.

Also it is furder to be noted that the Ensigne bearer marching in the midst of his band or companie through any Cittie or great Towne, ought to carry his Ensigne open and vpright, and not wound vp about his Ensigne staffe, nor yet the lowest part of the Taffara of his ensigne gathered into his hand, and leaned vppon his shoulder, but vpright as aforesaid. Howbeit hauing marcht thorough the Cittie or Towne into the fields, and being out of the sight of the multitude of the people, he may then either winde vp his Ensigne, or gather the lower part of the taffera into his hand, and leane the same to his shoulder if it pleaseth him.

How Ensignes  
bearers ought  
to carie their  
Ensignes  
marching  
through a  
great Citie or  
Towne.

Also I would wish that all Ensigne bearers should bee armed in this sort following (viz) a light vpright & sharp crowned Spanish burgonet, a Coller, a Cuyrass with short tassles, or without tassles, and a backe with a paire of sleeues and gloues of fine maile, or without gloues of maile, to the intent that they may carry their Ensignes with the more ease: and his said armour I would wish to bee of a good and a hard temper to resist the point of a pique, or halbard, and no waies at the prooffe of harquebuzze nor pistoll shot, because that such armors at the prooffe are too heauie for Ensigne bearers to march withall, and to carry and mannage their Ensignes: Besides that Ensigne bearers being most commonly in the mid partes or Centers of squadrons are verie seldom hurt by the bullets of any peeces of fire maniable but rather with piques swords, or halbards, vpon a battle well fought.

How Ensigne-  
bearers should  
be armed.

Also I would wish that the Ensigne bearer should haue a Deputy Ensigne bearer, who should be of his owne so-

Euerie Ensigne-  
bearer is to  
haue a deputie  
Ensigne bearer.

What manner  
of men I would  
with the En-  
signebearers  
and their depu-  
ties to be.

The deputie  
Ensignebearer  
how he should  
be armed and  
what weapon  
he should cary.

The deputie  
Ensignebearer  
is to take the  
like oathe for  
the guard of  
the Ensigne  
that the En-  
signebearer  
hath taken,

Preheminen-  
ces of right,  
due to the de-  
putie ensigne-  
bearer.

How Sergeants  
of bands should  
be armed.

The office of  
Sergeants in  
marching with  
their bands.

cietie or Camerada, and this deputy Ensignebearer, as also the Ensignebearer himselfe I would wish should be men of good force and strength, and therewithall that they should be men verie valiant, and verie sober and of good discretion, and able to speake well and deliuer their mindes to the encouraging of all souldiors about them; and this deputy Ensignebearer being in all points armed like vnto the Ensignebearer, should carrie a faire, and a good halbard, which halbard should be in common betwixt him and the Ensignebearer, to the intent that when the Ensignebearer is disposed to deliuer his Ensigne to his Deputie, to ease himselfe, that then deliue- ring his Ensigne, hee should take his halbard of his De- putie.

Also I would that the same Deputie Ensignebearer should take the like oath for the guard and defence of the Ensigne that the Ensignebearer himselfe hath taken, I meane hee as a deputie, and the other as Ensignebearer himselfe: And therefore I would wish that the Deputie Ensignebearer either vpon the aduancement to higher place or death of the Ensignebearer should succeed him in his place of Ensignebearer, and that during the time of his being deputie, he should haue an aduantage of pay according to his place.

Also I would wish the Seargeants of the band, and of all bands to be armed in all points like to the Ensignebearer as is before set downe, as also weaponed like him with his halbard, sworde and dagger: Howbeit I would not that the sergeants should weare any long or short tasses because that their office in marching with their band is to performe the Captains directions with celeritie, as also to march and sometimes to trot by the flanks of the band to see that the souldiors doe march straight in their ranks both by frunt & flanks, and that they do with great silence obserue their proportionate and equall distances as well betwixt euery soldior and soldior in ranke; as also betwixt euerie ranke and ranke, with all other orders and obseruations militarie.

Also

Also a Captaine leading his band through any Cittie or great Towne ought to march in his Corflet compleat, and to march before his band with his pique vpon his shoulder: Howbeit his page may weare his burgonet, and carry his target either before him or by him. And so likewise the Lieutenant of the band being armed & weaponed in the same sort ought to march at the backe or Rereward (as they call it) of the band; howbeit this is alwaies intended by such Captains, as haue disposition of bodie to performe the same. But in case that the Captaine be very olde, or haue any other corporall impediment, whereby he is not well able to performe the same, then he is to march before his band more lightlie armed as he thinketh most conuenient, with his sword and dagger and his leading staffe in his hand.

How a Captaine leading his band through any Cittie or great Towne ought to marche.

Also it is a great shame for any Captaine, <sup>or</sup> Lieutenant of a band of footmen to ride in the fiede before or with his band vpon any liuely or swift running horse or Gelding, but vpon a simple hackney beeing sure of foote that will gallop a Caunterburie pace by the frunt, flankes, and backe of his band, to see order obserued and to ease himselfe vpon; by reason that when Captaines doe in the field vpon swift running horses or geldings lead their bands, it dooth giue the soldiours occasion to doubt whether the Captains will carrie with them or not, vpon any accident or occasion of extremitie.

A great shame for any Captaine or Lieutenant to lead his band in the field vpon a swift running horse.

And here it is further to be noted, that after all these aforesaid reducements of a single band into diuers orders and formes as aforesaid, that neyther in Camp, field, nor town, they must break their ranks to go into their quarter to lodge, vntill their Captain, Lieutenant, or sergeant doe come and giue licence to the Ensignbearer to depart out of his place and lodge; which Ensignbearer departing with his Ensigne in his hand, out of his place wheras he before marched, and himselfe pronouncing to y soldiours next about him that they may lodge, they all then may, some conuenient number accompanying & guarding the

No priuate band neither of horsemen nor footmen being reduced into their single order of ranks or into any square ought to disorder and breake their ranks vntill the Captaine hath giuen comāndment or licence to the Ensignbearer to lodge. &c.



Ensignbearer with his Ensigne orderlie, and with silence breake their rankes and lodge, and goe into their quarter, or may in the Campe or Towne make prouision of victuall, and other things as they think most requisite: And the like is to be performed aswel by squadrons composed of diuers Ensignes as by one priuate band; that is, that a squadron being reduced into forme within y<sup>e</sup> market place of a Towne, or in the place of assembly within their Campe, they must neuer breake their rankes to go to lodge, vntill by the commandment of the Coronell or Sergeant Maior to the Ensignbearers giuen, they vnderstand or see that the Ensignbearers with their Ensignes in their hands pronouncing licence to lodge, are departed, or departing out of the Centre of the squadron; And therewithall it is further to be noted that all the Ensignbearers of euery regiment, must fixe their Ensignes vp-right in the ground all in one rank, a conuenient distance from and before their quarters, euery Ensigne directlie before the band that it doth belong vnto, I meane in the frunt of euery one of their quarters and bands towards the place of armes and assembly. And thus farre concerning the aforesaid different particularities; And now againe I reuert to other brieve speeches, and wordes, and other orders, proceedinges, and particularities militarie to be performed by Captaines and officers in the field.

No squadron consisting of diuers bands ought to disorder and breake their rankes vntill the Coronell or Coronells or Sergeants Maiors do come to the ranke of Ensignes, and licence them to departe and lodge.

The Ensignbearers of euery Regiment must at the time of their lodging fixe their Ensignes vp-right in the ground in the place of assembly in the frunt of their quarters.

Brief speeches to be vsed by Captains to their soldiours, when they would haue them to vp-right their piques

And if a Captain or diuers Captains, or their officers would haue their piquers standing at their piques auanced as is before written to take their piques into the boultres of their armes, as soldiours do vse when they approach verie neare the place of their watch, or as piquers ought to do when they are to charge another square of piques, or to make head and resist a charge of horsemen, then are they to saie to the first ranke *Vp-right your piques*, which is asmuch to say, take the butends of your piques into the palmes of your right hands, & carry them in the boultres of your armes with the pointes vp-right towards the hea-

uens:

uens : which being performed by the first ranke, then the second, third, fourth and fift rankes, and so consequentlie all the rest of the rankes one after another ought to vpright their piques as aforesaid. And if all the piquers of a band, or diuers bandes being reduced into any forme of Squadron in the field, & hauing vprighted their piques in the boulttes of their armes as aforesaid, and that the Sergeant Maior or Captaines would haue their piquers to charge or to receaue a charge of another square of piquers their Enemies, then are they to say to the first rankes of piquers. *Straighten and close your rankes, couch your piques and charge*: which being pronounced, all the piquers of the first ranke must ioine, and close themselves close in frunt, letting fall the points of their piques and carying them close breasthigh with both their hands steadilie and firmly, the points full in the faces of their Enemies: And the second ranke likewise straightning and closing themselves by flanke and frunt, and ioyning themselves to the backe of the first ranke, and following them steppe with steppe carrying their piques aboue-hand ouer the shoulders of the first ranke, the points of their piques likewise towards the faces of their Enemies, And the third ranke closing and straightning themselves in flanke and frunt, and ioyning themselves to the backe of the second ranke; And the fourth ranke likewise straightning & closing themselves to the backs and shoulders of the third ranke, and carrying their piques firmelie with both their hands ouer y shoulders of all the ranks before them, the points of their piques likewise towards the faces of their enemies approching. And all the rest of the ranks of piquers following step with step each one at the heeles of the other, must carry their piques still vpright in the palmes of their hands, and in the boultts of their armes as abouesaid, but yet bending the pointes of them somewhat towards their enemies, that they may be seen ready in an instant to let fall the points of their piques towards their enemies, and to succor the ranke before them

Brief speeches to be vsed by Sergeant Maiors or Captaines to their soldiours when they would haue them to charge or receaue a charge of another Squadron of piquers.

How piquers should charge or receaue a charge of another Squadron of piquers.

Piquers when they approach their enemies, are not to shake & clatter their piques, but are to carry them firme & steady.

them vpon any necessitie, or heard incounter of their Enemies. Aduising therewithall that no Captaines nor officers of bandes do in any wise teach nor suffer their piquers, when they shall approach their Enemies to charge them, to shake and clatter their piques, as some newe phantastical Captaines and officers of this time do teach their soldiors to do; as though they would make their enemies afraid before they come at them: which is more like vnto such as do plaie the Soldans and Sarazins vpon a Stage, then like soldiors piquers in the field, who should at an approach and charge, carie their piques as steadie and firme as they can possible, the points full in the faces of their enemies as is aforesaid.

The opinion of such as do vainly hold that piquers in squadron should lie at the push of y<sup>e</sup> pique, thereby with thrusts and foines, to annoy their enemies, answered.

But in this place I thinke good further to notefie vnto the Readers of these mine instructions that in the yeare. 1588. I did heare some two or three of our Nation of principall offices and charge Militarie hold an opinion, that when two squadrons of Enemies all piquers should come to incounter and confrunt the one with the other, that then the formost ranks of them should lie at the push of the pique and so should annoie the one the other, with thrusts and foines (as they terme it) at all the length of their Armes and piques, according to the vse of single Combattes either in sport or earnest betwixt piquer and piquer. By which kinde of fighting of squadrons at the push of the pique, I say, that none of the rankes can fight but only the first ranke, because that if they obserue their proportionate distances according to order and discipline, the piques of the second rank are too short to reach with their points the first rank of their enemies squadron likewise standing still foining at all the length of their Armes and piques; as they vaine lie imagine: Yea although to the trouble and disorder of the first ranke before them they do thrust and foine ouer their shoulders; During which time of the pushing and foyning of the two first rankes of the two squadrons of enemies, all the rest of the rankes of both the squadrons must by such an



vnskillfull kind of fighting stand still and looke on and cry  
aime, vnill the first ranke of each Squadron hath fought  
their bellies full, or vtill they can fight no longer: which  
is a very scorne and mockerie mylitarie to be either spo-  
ken or thought of by any men of warre that doo pretend  
to haue seene any action effectuellie performed betwixt  
any great numbers of piquers reduced into form of squa-  
drons in the field. For in troth according to all reason  
and true experience, such a Squadron as should thinke it  
their greatest aduantage to fight in that sort, must (con-  
trarie to discipline) inlarge themselves in their ranks and  
distaunces both in frunt and by flankes, to the intent that  
they may haue elbow roome enough without any impe-  
diment by the nearnesse of the ranks behind them, to pul  
backe their armes, and to thrust at their enemies appro-  
ching them at all the length they can of their armes and  
piques, and againe with dexteritie to pull backe, & retire  
them to giue new thrusts: which opening & enlargment  
of ranks being perceiued by the contrarie Squadron (who  
if they be skilful men of warre) doe come closed in their  
rankes both in frunt and by flankes, as close as they can  
possible march pace with pace and step with step, as if  
they were one entire body, carrying their piques with  
both their hands breast high, all the points of the piques  
of the first rank of one euennesse & equality not any one  
preceeding the other: And so likewise the points of al the  
piques of the second, third and fourth ranks, carrying the  
like equalitie and euennesse; but yet the points of euerie  
ranke of piques, shorter and further distant almost by a  
yard from their enemies faces, then the pointes of the  
ranke that doo preceed them; And all those fower ranks  
marching or moouing forward together pace with pace  
and step with step, carrying their piques firmly with both  
their hands brest high as aforesaid their points full in their  
enemies faces, they doe altogether giue a puissant thrush,  
the points of the first ranke of piques, first lighting vpon  
the faces of the first ranke or ran' es of their enemies; and

the points of the second, third, and fourth ranks, subsequently in a manner all in an instant, doe all one after another in such terrible sort light vpon the faces, breasts and bodies of the formost ranks of the enemies that do stand still pushing and foining with their piques in their ranks opened and enlarged, that they neuer giue them any leysure any waies to pull backe and recouer the vse of their piques to giue any new thrustes, nor yet to close their ranks enlarged, but doo ouerthrow, disorder and breake them with as great facilitie, as if they were but a flocke of geese; as all men of right consideration and iudgement may easilie consider and see.

But after all this it may be, that some very curious and not skilfull in actions of Armes, may demand what the formost ranks of this well ordered and practised Squadron before mentioned shall doo after they haue giuen their aforesaid puissant blows & thrusts with their piques in case that they doo not at the first incountry ouerthrow and breake the contrary Squadron of their enemies: ther-vnto I say, that the foremost ranks of the Squadron hauiug with the points of their piques lighted vpon the bare faces of the formost ranks of their enemies, or vpon their Collers, pouldrons, quirasses, rasses, or disarmed parts of their thighes; by which blowes giuen they haue either slaine, ouerthrown, or wounded those that they haue lighted vpon, or that the points of their piques lighting vpon their armours haue glanced off, and beyond them; in such sort as by the nearnes of the formost ranks of their enemies before them, they haue not space enough againe to thrust; nor that by the nearnes of their fellowes ranks next behind them, they haue any conuenient elbowe roome to pull backe their piques to giue a new thrust; by meanes whereof they haue vtterly loste the vse of their piques, they therefore must either presentlie let them fall to the ground as vnprofitable; or else may with both their hands dart, and throw them as farre forward into & amongst the ranks of their enemies as they can,

can, to the intent by the length of them to trouble their ranks, and presently in the twinkling of an eie or instant, must draw their short arming swordes and daggers, and giue a blow and thrust (tearmed a halfe reuerse, & thrust) all at, and in one time at their faces: And therewithall must presentlie in an instant, with their daggers in their left hands, thrust at the bottome of their enemies bellies vnder the lammes of their Cuyrasses, or at any other disarmed parts: In such sort as then al the ranks of the whol Squadron one at the heeles of the other pressing in order forward, doo with short weapons, and with the force of their ranks closed, seeke to wound, open, or beare ouer the rankes of their enemies to their vtter ruine: At which time and action all the inner rankes of piques sauing the first, 4. or 5. rankes, can with their piques worke no effect, by reason that the said 4. or 5. rankes before them being next to their enemies, are so neare and close together, that they cannot with any thrust vse the pointes of their piques against their said enemies, without endangering or disordering their fellowes before them; For which causes by al reason and experience militarie, short staued, long edged, and short and strong pointed battleaxes or halbards, of the length of 5. foot or 5. foot and a halfe in all their lengths, at the vttermost, in the hands of lustie and well armed soldiours that doo follow the first 5. rankes of piquers at the heeles, doo both with blow at the head, and thrust at the face, worke wonderfull effects, and doo carrie all to the ground. By all which particularities before alleaged and declared, I thinke it may be apparant to all such as are not obstinatelie ignorant, that Battles and Squadrons of piquers in the field when they doo encounter and charge one another, are not by any reason or experience mylitarie to stand al day thrusting, pushing, and foining one at another, as some doo most vaineilie imagine, but ought according to all experience with one puissant charge and thrush to enter and disorder, wound, open, and break the one the other, as is before at large declared.



Briefe speeches  
to be vied by a  
Sergeant  
Maier, or a  
Captaine to  
their soldiours  
piquers, when  
they are readie  
to be charged  
by a Squadron  
of Launces.

How piquers  
should resist a  
charge of  
Launces.

And if all the piquers of a band or of diuers bands beeing reduced into any forme of Squadron, should be charged with a square or troupe of horsemen, hauing their piques vprighted in the palms of their hands, and boults of their arms (as abouesaid) and the sergeant Maiors and Captains seeing the Launces ready to charge them, they should then say vnto their piquers, *Straighten and close your ranks close, catch your piques and make head*: which beeing by them pronounced, al the soldiours in the first rank should close themselves in an instant in frunt, and setting the butends of their piques vnder their right feet firmly to stay the endes of them from sliding, they should hold their piques with their left hands, about a yard and a quarter from the butends, leaning their right knees strongly vpon their piques to keepe them the more firme, & should direct the points verie lowe towards the breasts of their enemies horses, hauing all their short arming swords redie drawne in their right hands, the points forward, redie to kill or hogh any barbed horse or horses that by chance may breake the piques and enter: And then the second ranke of piquers straightning and closing themselves in frunt, should let fall the pointes of their piques towards their enemies, and should ioine themselves close to the backe of the first ranke, bearing their piques firmly with both their hands, almost close to the vpper part of their breasts ouer the shoulders of the first ranke, at all the conuenient length they may, with the pointes towards the faces of the enemies horses: And the thirde, fourth, and fift rankes of piquers in the same sort should close and ioyne themselves close, each one to the backe and shoulders of the rankes before them: And each one of those rankes should carrie their piques firmelie with both their handes ouer the shoulders of the rankes before them, with the pointes of their piques full in the eies and faces of the horses, and bodies of the horsemen: And the sixth, seuenth, and all the rest of the backer rankes straightning and closing themselves as aforesaid should

carry

carry their piques vpright in the boulttes of their armes, but yet the pointes somewhat bending forward towards the enemie readie alwaies to fauour and succour the rankes before them: And thus all the rankes of the whole squadron being vnited, closed and incorporated as it were into one entire bodie, should with mightie hand resist & repulse any furious charge of horsemen.

But it is to be noted that in case the Sergeant Maior be disposed to reduce three rankes of Harquebuziers, or else two rankes of mosquetiers, and those not too thicke before the frunt of the squadron of piques, to the intent to giue a vollee of shotte at the Launces approching; then the piquers of the first ranke must not sette their piques vnder their right feet with their swords drawne (as aforesaid) but the faide two rankes of mosquetiers, or the three rankes of harquebuziers, seeing the Launces ready to charge them, must very orderlie retire themselues almost close to the forefeete of the firste ranke of piquers; and there falling vpon their right knees, they must set their left elbowes vpon their left knees, the more firmelie and steadilie to beare and discharge their mosquets or harguebuzes, as from very steadie restes at the horses or horsemen comming in their Carrire within 10. or 12. or 15. <sup>a</sup> paces.

And then the first ranke of piquers, as also the second, third, and fourth, must beare all their piques firmly abouehand close to the vpper parts of their breasts, the pointes of their piques full in the breasts and faces of the horses; and so must encouer and guard the shot vnder their piques, and brauely repulse & disorder the Launces.

<sup>b</sup> Aduising all Conductors and leaders of mosquet shot that in this or the like action of arms before declared they do instruct & giue order to al their mosquetiers to charge their mosquets with 5. or 6. round hailshot of war of the heighth of Reistres pistoll bullets which are called by the

E.3.

Spaniard

metrical inches, or inches (as we terme them) by the Rule, & so it is to be vnder stood by the Reader in all my writings, where I speake of paces. <sup>c</sup> The order that mosquetiers should obserue in charging their peeces in the foresaid action.

How piquers should receiue a charge of Launces in case the Sergeant Maior or Captains should thinke good to place any weapons of vollee before them.

The formost rankes of a squadron of piquers cannot conveniently and aptly encouer & guard aboue 3 rankes of Harquebuziers nor aboue 2 rankes of musquetiers, against the charge of Launces.

How and in what distances harquebuziers or mosquetiers are to discharge their peeces from vnder a squadron of piques.

<sup>a</sup> Euerie Geometricall pace doth consist of 5 foot, & euerie foot doth consist of 12 Geo-

*Spaniards Perdigones de guerra*: and that they do thrust betweene the powder and the haileshot some conuenient quantitie of browne or soft paper, or something else to restraine and keepe the powder close together, and then to put in the round haileshot of warre, & againe to thrust after the same a conuenient quantity of browne paper or something else to keepe the haileshot close together, and to restraine both powder and shot; in such sort as therby the powder may carry the haileshot the further, and giue the greater blow, which within 10. 15. or 20. paces is of great effect.

But in this case the mosquetiers must take great heed, that they do not ouercharge their peeces with powder, nor with aboue the number of .5. or .6. haileshot of warre at the most, as aforesaid; least that their peeces should break or recoile, and so ouerthrow them to the trouble of the piquers, from vnder whose piques they are to discharge their peeces: And this manner of discharging of haileshot of warre by mosquetiers is for diuers times and places of seruice, of great effect, so as they giue no volec at the enemye aboue .20. paces at the furthest. And I do further aduertise that no musquetiers, nor harquebuziers, reduced vnder the garde of a squadron of piquers, should giue any volec, or volces of shot neither with full bullets nor with any haileshot of warre at any squadron or troupe of Launces charging, or approaching to charge neither. 300. 200. nor yet .100. paces, with intent to recharge againe, and to giue a new volec: Because that both by reason and experience the first volec either of musquets, or harquebuezes, being charged as they ought to be either with haileshot of warre, or full bullets, and being giuen within .10. 15. or .20. paces at the Launces comming in their Carrire to charge, doth terrefie, wound and kill more horses and men, then .10. volces of musquets or harquebuzes giuen .300. 200. or .100 paces distant can do. And this encouering of shot with piques (abouesayd) at my trayning of Maister Barringtons, Maister Westons



Westons, and Maister Maxeies bandes at Chelmefford this last sommer .1588. I did shewe vnto them and to their officers both by actuall demonstrations and reasons with diuers other perticularities appertaining both to horsemen and footmen.

But now whereas there be diuers that haue conceiued an opinion from the discourse of *Mounſer de la Noüe*, that in case there be any great ouerplus of harquebuze or mosquet shott more then a squadron of piquers that is without horsemen can encouer and garde vnder their piques from the charge of a squadron or diuers squadrons of Launces, that vpon that occasion they should be reduced into square, and enuironed or empaied in frunt, flanks and back, with 6. or 7. rankes of piquers; and that y<sup>e</sup> Launces cōming in their squadrons to charge them in frunt, in flanks, or back; y<sup>e</sup> piquers closing themselues close in frunt, flanks, and backe, and bending themselues forward with their piques to encouer and garde certen musquetiers and harquebuziers placed before them, as also to resist & repulse a charge of horsemen; that then the rankes of the aforesaid harquebuziers placed within the ranks of piques, may giue a vollee of shot ouer the piquers heads before them, at so much of the bodies of the horsemen as do appeare aboue the heads of the piquers, greatly to the danger and mischief of the Launces charging. Certenlie I doo thinke that the opinion of so sufficient a man of war and old soldior is no waies to be contemned, but greatly to be regarded: Howbeit when I come to consider that the same was neuer yet put in practise in any seruice of the field: and therefore dooth rest but only in imagination, I will (with the helpe of almightie God) to the intent that the true effect and effects of the same may be y<sup>e</sup> more apparant, alledge diuers reasons wherefore (in mine opinion) the same can be no waies profitable, but very dangerous to the whole squadron, and of verie small or no annoiance to the Launces; and my reasons are these: First, when a squadron of piques are to make head and re-

The opinion  
of Mounſieur  
de la Noue.

sist

The opinion of  
the author for-  
tified with rea-  
sons contrary to  
the opinion of  
Mounſieur de  
la Noue.

fiſt a Squadron of Launces comming in their Carrire to charge them, they are to ſtraighten and cloſe themſelues by frunt and flankes as cloſe as they can, making themſelues as it were, one entire body, to y intent that they may the more ſtimely and ſtrongly ſtand together with their piques bent to the encouering and guarding of the moſquetiers before them, and to the reſiſting and repulſing of the horſmen, which when the formolt .7. rankes haue performed; then if the harquebuziers that are within the piques in the centre of the battle, as alſo the piquers of the flankes and backe, to the intent that the Squadron may keepe proportion and forme, do likewise ſtraighten and cloſe themſelues in their rankes by frunt and flankes, as the piquers before them haue done; it commeth to paſſe that they are ſo cloſe together, that hauing no elbowe ſome to diſcharge their peeces at ſome kinde of point and blanke: the diſcharging of their ſhort vpon diuers accidents doth become more daungerous to their fellowes piquers in the rankes before them, then any waies to the Launces; becauſe that being ſo neare together, euerie each one do ſo trouble the armes, peeces, and handes of their companions; that when they thinke to ſhoote ouer their fellowes piquers heads at the Launces, they are more likely to ſhoote too lowe, and to kill ſome of their fellow piquers in the rankes before them, to the daunger of the diſordering of the whole Squadron: Beſides that it is wonderfull daungerous if any flaſke, or touchboxe by any accident ſhould fall on fire by ſo many matches light, being ſo neare together, which if it ſhould happen by one flaſke or tuchboxe taking fire; there is no doubt but that the ſame would ſet on fire a great ſort of other flaſkes and touchboxes, burning and ſcorching many ſoldiors; in ſuch ſorte, as that one accident alone, would cauſe ſo great diſorder and feare, that it were enough to diſcorder and ouerthrow a whole Squadron if it were of ten thouſand men; although they were the moſt practiſed ſoldiors that are in Chriſtendome.

But

But peradventure som body not experienced in y<sup>e</sup> straightning & closing of a Squadron of armed footmen by frunt and flanks, will say; y<sup>e</sup> although al the ranks of piquers both by frunt, flanks, & back, do straighten & close themselves to make head against y<sup>e</sup> launces (as aforesaid) yet that y<sup>e</sup> harquebuziers that are within the Squadron may remain so enlarged in their ranks, as y<sup>e</sup> they shal haue so much elbowe room without any waies troubling or touching one another, that they may with great facility discharg their peeces ouer y<sup>e</sup> heads of the piquers before them without any waies troubling them, or endangering the firing of their flasks & touchboxes to the great mischiefe of the Launces. Whervnto it is to be answered, that if euery rank of the whol Squadron be of one number of soldiours, as al wel formed Squadrons are; & that by flanks y<sup>e</sup> number of ranks be of the like number to the frunt & back; wherby it cometh to passe that the Squadron is a iust square in frunt, in flanks, & back; or that the Squadron be double as broad; that is, as broad again in frunt and back, as it is by flanks, or else that the Squadron be triple as many, that is three times as many in frunt as by flanks, or more or fewer according to the nature and aduantage of the ground, or of other occasions and aduantages, that may seeme best to the Sergeant Maior, or to the Sergeant Maior generall that hath the ordering of y<sup>e</sup> said Squadron: then in which of those formes soeuer, or any other that the Squadron of footmen should be reduced into; the formost 7. ranks of piquers in frunt, straightning, and closing themselves in their ranks to make head against y<sup>e</sup> horfmen charging (as aforesaid) & likewise the 7. ranks of piquers at the back of y<sup>e</sup> Squadron straightning, & closing themselves, & turning their faces and piques backward, to the intent to make frunt and head against a charge of Launces that would charge them in back: & the harquebuziers y<sup>e</sup> do remaine within the Squadron empaled on euery side with 7. ranks of piquers (as aforesaid) still remaining enlarged in their rankes to haue the more commoditie to discharge their peeces ouer the piquers heads; of diuers disproportions

An obiection answered.



and disorders that must by the forming of this foresaide Squadron of necessitie succeed by the harquebuziers remaining still enlarged in their rankes, and the piquers straightned and closed in their rankes: This one chiefe and most notorious deformed disorder, that doth include all the rest, must needs ensue to the present ruine and ouerthrowe of the whole Squadron; that is, by 2. or 3. charges of the Launces giuen at one time vpon the open and vnguarded places of the Squadron; and that by reason that y harquebuziers remaining stil enlarged in their rankes in frunt and by flanks, the more orderlie to discharge their peeces, doo occupie so great a quantitie of ground, that all the rankes of the piquers that doo empale the harquebuziers of the right and left flanks straightning and closing themselues by frunt and flanks as the ranks of the piquers of the frunt and backe haue doone, cannot possible performe the same in any such sort, but that the said piquers of both the flanks must remain a great deale too short to close themselues, and ioine with the 7. ranks of piquers in frunt, and the 7. rankes of piquers in back: wherby of necessitie it would come to passe, that there would be 4. open places betwixt the 4. or rather 8. corners of the Squadron vnguarded with piques; where the Launces without receiuing any resistance, nor so much as one blow of the point of a pique, might charge and giue in amongst the harquebuziers within the bodie of the Squadron, to the disordering and vter ouerthrow of the whole Squadron with great facilitie, as any man well practised and of good experience and iudgement in matters militarie, may easily consider & conceaue. For which causes, dangerous accidents, and reasons before alleaged mine opinion is, that I would neuer place nor yet suffer any weapons of fire, to enter within the body of my Squadron of piques.

Weapons of  
fire are no  
waits to be pla-  
ced nor yet to  
be suffered to en-  
ter within the  
bodie of a  
Squadron of  
piques.

But now furthermore, if any number of souldiors of what weapon soeuer they bee, beeing reduced into any forme of square, and that the Sergeant Maior or Cap-  
taines

taines would make of flanke frunt; then are they to go to that flanke and side, that they would make frunt, and being right against the midst, somewhat distant from the flanke, they should say to their soldiours aloud. *Frunt to me souldiors*: which being by them pronounced; the first rank next vnto them is to turn their faces towards them, & so subsequentlie al the rest of the rankes one after another: But because that by making the flanke frunt, the Squadron commeth to be in disproportion, by reason that the distances of the ranks of a Squadron, being reduced into any forme of square to march or to fight, are greater by flankes; that is betwixt ranke and ranke, then they are by frunt; that is betwixt soldior and soldior in frunt: The Sergeant Maior and Captains in making the flank frunt, must straighten all the rankes in frunt and inlarge them by flankes; and so reduce them into their due and proportionate distances.

Brief speeches to be vied by Captains to their soldiours when they should make of flanke frunt.

How a Sergeant Maior or Captain in making of flanke frunt is to reduce their piquers into their due proportionate distances.

And in case the sergeant Maior or Captains will make of the backe frunt, then they are to goe to the backe and pronounce with a loude voice the like words, & then all the rankes are to turne their faces and to make their frunt that waies: And as these brieue words pronounced for the purpose aforesaid are to bee vsed vnto souldiors footmen; so the like wordes for the same effect and purpose to make flanke frunt, may serue for men at armes, dimilaunces, or light horsmen; as for example, If a Coronell or Captaine of men at armes, or dimilaunces hauing reduced their Launces into any forme or Squadron, bee disposed to make of flanke frunt; then they placing them selues vpon the side or flanke as aforesaid, and saying to their horsmen with a high voice, *Frunt to me Launces*, or if they be light horsmen, *Frunt to me speares*, all the horsmen of what armour and weapon soeuer they bee, must turne the faces of their horses, and make frunt that waie, hauing regard to reforme and reduce themselues into their proportionate distances by frunt & flank as aforesaid.

How to make of backe frunt,

How Captains or Coronells of horsmen are to make of flanke frunt.

And now hauing written concerning the ordering  
F.2. and



It doth behoue the  
Generall and the  
Lord Marshal of an  
Armie as also the  
Sergeante Maior  
generall alwaies to  
haue about them a  
verite roll of all the  
Coronells and Cap-  
tains names with the  
number of euery  
one of their Regi-  
ments, and what  
number of soldiours  
also doe appertaine  
to euery Ensigne &  
band as well of horse  
men as of footmen  
throughout the  
whole armie, that  
whereby vpon all oc-  
casions they may  
giue present orders  
and directions.  
The waie and order  
how a Squadron  
should be reduced  
into forme in the  
open fields, either to  
march or fight.  
All Coronells and  
Sergeants Maiors of  
Regiments as well of  
horsemen as of foot-  
men ought to haue  
continually about  
them a Roll of all  
the Captains and  
their Lieutenants  
names that are in  
their Regiments  
with the number  
of soldiours and diffe-  
rent armors and  
weapons that do be-  
long to euery band  
or companie thereby  
to giue present di-  
rections.

and forming of priuate bands and companies of soldiours,  
with diuers and sundry particularities concerning as well  
squadrons composed of diuers bands, as of single bands:  
I will with the helpe of Almighty God, proceed to shew  
how a Squadron should bee reduced into forme in the o-  
pen fields, to march or fight, that by the curious forming  
of that first one Squadron with diuers particularities con-  
cerning the same; all such as doo professe armes, and are  
of consideration may with great facilitie see and obserue  
all such particularities as they shall thinke therein worth  
the noting and obseruing: And therefore I say for exam-  
ples sake: If a Coronell or his Sergeant Maior of a Regi-  
ment of 4000. footmen of diuers weapons bee disposed  
to reduce 2100. piquers of the same Regiment into squa-  
dron, and that hee would forme his Squadron double as  
broad, or a thirde part broader, or more, or lesse in frunt  
then by flanke; then he first is to consider of how manie  
piquers he will make his frunt, that is, how many soldiours  
euery ranke from frunt to backe shall conteine, as also of  
how many rankes the same Squadron by flank, or flanks  
shall consist; and therewithall of how many diuisions or  
compertiments of bands he will forme the said Squadron;  
and according to the same, the Sergeant Maior must  
command all the Captaines or their Lieutenants, the pi-  
quers of whose bands are to enter into Squadron, to sepa-  
rate them from all other sorts of weapons, and to reduce  
them into so many or so many in euery ranke, and so ma-  
ny rankes by flank as he before hath propounded and re-  
solved with himselfe. As for example, hauing 2100. pi-  
quers to reduce into one battle, and that he thinketh 55.  
soldiours in a ranke, and 38. rankes by flanks to be a con-  
uenient forme of Squadron according to the nature of the  
ground to march and fight; he then may make his com-  
pertiments of the piquers of euery priuate band, of odde  
numbers; or of different odde numbers, as of 5. and 7. or  
else of euen and odde numbers, as of 4. of 5. of 6. and of  
7. according to the greatnesse or smalnesse of the num-  
ber



ber of piquers of euery priuate band, in case there be none of the numbers too small; which if any of them be, then they are to be vnited and incorporated with the compertiments of the piquers of other bands; alwaies obseruing that the different numbers of al those compertiments being vnited in frunt doo make iust 55. souldiors, and by flankes 38. ranke. And therefore I will begin with three different formings of squadrons, which of all others are most ready and best; of the which the first is, That a Coronell or his Sergeant Maior hauing considered and cast how many compertimentes or diuisions of piquers hee will make the frunt of his Squadron of; and that the same compertiments be they euen or od, or of compertiments both of euen and odde numbers, so as they all vnited into one bodie of Squadron doo make in frunt but the iust number of 55. soldiors: then the Coronel or his sergeant Maior determining to forme his Squadron, and seeing all those compertiments of piquers by their Captains, deuided and separated from all the weapons of vlee & other weapons, and therefore ready to bee reduced into Squadron; he then is to say to the captain that dooth lead that compertiment, or companie that is next him, if he thinketh good to begin his Squadron with that compertiment: *March up to yonder ground, pointing to the same with his warder; & there you & your cōpanie auance your piques and make a pause*: which being by that company or compertiment performed; then he is to say to the Capitaines of two other compertiments or companies: *March vpp with your company vpon the right flanke, and you with your company by the left flank of yonder compertiment, and incorporate your compertiments in frunt, flankes, and backe, with that companie or compertiment*; Then the Coronelles drummer Maior, or rather his trompeter according to the vse of the Suissers in respect that the foundes and commandementes of the same may bee the better and further heard and vnderstoode for the forming of battailes and squadrons, then the strokes of Drummes

Three different formings of squadrons.

The firste.

can bee; is presentlie to founde the forming of the Squadron by doubling by both the sides or flanks at one time, according vnto the order of the doubling of the 3. first compertimentes; which being by all the rest of the compertiments performed; I meane by marching vppe and doubling themselues vpon both the flanks or sides of the 3. first compertiments formed; all marching and succeeding one another both vpon the right and lefte flanks in a manner at one time; and so the Squadron being reduced into forme; the first compertiment by this kind of forming and doubling vpon both flanks of the same, is now come to be the middlemost compertiment of the whole Squadron: and this manner of forming of a Squadron by doubling the compertiments vpon both flanks at one time, is one of the readiest, and best of all others, if the ground doo permit the performance thereof.

The second  
waie to forme  
Squadrones.

Then there is another order in forming of a Squadron; and that may bee tearmed to forme and double a Squadron with companies, or compertiments by backe, and that is to be performed in this sort; First, that a Sergeant Maior hauing considered which waies he will make the frunt of his Squadron, he is then to command that euerie companie or compertiment that are to enter into Squadron shall be reduced into so many souldiors by flank, as he dooth meane to make his frunt of, hauing regard also to the number of the ranks that he will make his whole Squadron of by flanks: which being by his direction, as also by the sound of the Coronels trompetter throughtout all the companies or compertiments performed; then he may say to the Captain of the first compertiment that he will make his frunt of, pointing or directing with his warder: *March to yonder ground, & there auance your piques and make a pause, and make of your right flank frunt, and reforme your distances according to discipline both by frunt and flanks, or if he hath determined to make his frunt of the left flank, he may then say, Make of your left flank frunt*

*frunte, and reforme your distances both by frunte and flankes* according as he hath before determined either the one waies or the other to make his frunt: which making of frunt either of the right, or of the left flanke is to be vnderstood that they should turne their faces and weapons one of those waies: which being by them performed, then if they were .55. rankes, and .5. in euerie ranke in their marching, they are now by making of their flanke frunt become .55. in frunt, that is so many in euerie ranke, and by flanke only .5. rankes: which aduancing of their piques, and pause, and making of flanke frunt by the first company, or compertiment performed; then he is to say to another compertiment of the like number of rankes by flanke, be they of euen or od numbers it importeth not so as he faile not in his great and generall account of the number of the rankes of the whole Squadron by flanke, or flankes. *March and double your selues by the backe of yonder compertiment, or companie, and there ~~is~~ make of flanke frunt, as that companie hath done.* Which being by them performed, then presentlie, but rather at the first, the Coronelles Trompetter is to sound the doubling of their Companies into Squadrō by back, which being by all the companies or compertiments performed and reduced into their conuenient distances both by frunt and flankes according to discipline either to march or to fight, then the Sergeant Maior may giue order and reduce vpon the flanks and corners of the Squadron all the different sortes of weapons of vollee into as many formes as he listeth, of sleeues, winges, hearfes, troupes &c, and may backe as many of them with light armed piquers, and halbarders, or battleaxes, as the number or remnante of those weapons will giue them leaue.

And yet there is another order of forming of a Squadron by doubling and redoubling of the compertiments vpon the backe of the first compertiment, which with diuers others, because I do not allowe them for so good as these before sett downe, I omit; and therefore proceeding



The third order of forming of Squadron;

ding to the third order of forming of a Squadron by doubling the compertiments only by one flanke, that is only either vpon the right, or vpon the leste flanke, with diuers and sundrie particularities concerning the same; I say that in case I had a regiment of .4000. footmen of diuers sorts of weapons, as abouesayd, and that I were disposed to reduce .2100. piquers into Squadron of .55. in frunt, & 38. by flanks, and that I thought good to make my compertiments altogether of like od nūbers, as of .5. soldiours in euerie ranke from frunt to backe, and the same of .38. rankes by flanks, I would then deuide them into .11. compertiments of .5. in euery ranke throughout euery compertiment, which vnited are .55. piquers in euery ranke: and in number of rankes by flanks .38. euery which compertiment of .5. from frunt to backe cōteining .190. soldiours, the whole Squadron consisting of .11. compertiments as aforesaid, doth come to consist of .2090. soldiours; the ouerplus which lacketh number to make a ranke and therefore to be tearmed a broken ranke .10. soldiours, who are either to march and place themselues with the ranke of Ensignes, or otherwise readie to be emploied as the Sergeant Maior shall thinke most conuenient. Now hauing all these .11. compertiments in the field seperated from all the rest of the weapons; and being disposed to reduce them presently into forme, the Coronell, or Sergeant Maior either leading them himselve, or pointing with his warder in his hand to the ground to y which they shal march vnto, is to vse these brieue speaches, or the like to the Captain that dooth lead the first band, or compertiment *March vp to that ground & there aduāce your piques & make a pause*; then presently after he is to say to the second band or compertiment, *March vp and double your selues by the left flanke of the first compertiment*, and so subsequently he is to commaūd his trumpetor to sound, as also otherwise to giue direction to the rest of the compertiments *that they shall double themselves euery one vpon the left flanke of the other*: but after that he hath vsed the brieue speaches aforesaid to the two first compertiments, then  
besides

besides the sounds of the trompettor for the forming of the squadrō, if he be not disposed to gallop with his horse by y flank of the rest of y compertiments y are furdre off behind, and to vse the like speaches of doubling by flanks as aforesaid, he may by certen signes that hee may vse to accustome his Captaines and officers vnto, either with his hand, or with his warder, direct them to the doubling of their rankes by flankes as aforesaid, which squadron, with all the Ensignes guarded with their halbardes, or battleaxes placed in the Centre, or betwixt the 2. middle rankes of the same beeing by the Coronell, or Sergeant Maior with so great facilitie perfourmed, and by him and his officers straightlie lookt into, that all their rankes as well in frunt as by flanke, doo obserue their most conuenient and proportionate distaunces either to march or to fight, he then may forme his fleeces, wings, squares, hearsses and troupes of harquebuziers, Archers, and mosquetiers, and backe as many of them with the rest of the piques and battleaxes, as the ground and the sayde remnant of those weapons wil giue them leaue, or as the approaching and cōming of the enemies shall giue them occasion. Now as this squadron is formed altogether of compertiments of like od numbers, so may the Sergeant Maior forme the very same squadron with compertiments of different odde numbers, as with compertiments of 5. and 7. or with compertiments of different euen and odde numbers, as of 4. 5. and 6. so as they all vnited in frunt doo come to make 55. souldiours, and by flanke 38. rankes, as is before declared: which different particularities with many others concerning aswell the ordering of horfmen as footmen, I haue set down by demonstration in a booke which I mean shortly to put in print, entituled. *Certen military discourses, and Arithmetical tables, with diuers formes and demonstrations for a Lord Martiall or for a sergeant Maior to form squadrons and to reduce both horfmen and footmen into diuers and many forms of battles, by me Composed 1585. or rather 1580.*

Squadrons may be formed of compertiments of like odd numbers, or of different odd numbers, or of different euen and odd numbers, as also of like euen numbers,

But now this foresaid Squadron being reduced into the forme of 55. by frunt and 38. by flankes, ouerplus a broken ranke of 10. souldiors as aforesaid, if the Sergeant Maior vpon the comming of the enemy, or vpon any other occasion shall thinke requisite to make the said Squadron broader in frunt, that is of more souldiors in euerie ranke, and shorter by flanke, that is to bee vnderstood of fewer rankes; then he may drawe vp by flanke, from the backe, or rereward (as some termeth it) as many rankes as he thinketh conuenient. As for example, If he be disposed to draw vp 4. rankes of piquers by flanke to frunt, he is then to say vnto his deputie Sergeant Maior, or to any other such Captaine or officer that dooth accompany him; *Draw vp 4. rankes from the backe of the Squadron by flanke*: which brieve speach or the like being by him pronounced, his said Lieutenant, Sergeant Maior, or other Captaine or officer by him appointed, is presently to goe to the left flanke of the last 4. rankes in backe, and to saie vnto them: *Frunt vnto me yee 4. last rankes, and let this word, frunt, from the left flanke passe throughout to the right flanke*; and that in case hee doo pronounce those wordes vpon the left flanke. Vppon which wordes pronounced, and the wordes passed from the one flanke to the other, and their faces and weapons turned towardes him; then he is to lead them vppe by the left flanke vntill they come to make euen frunt with the formost ranke of the Squadron; which being performed, then of 55. that the Squadron was before in euerie ranke from frunt to back, it is now come to be 59. throughout all the rankes from frunt to backe.

How a Sergeant Maior hauing reduced his Squadron into forme should vpon any occasion make it broader in frunt and shorter by flanke.

Diuers wayes and means for a Sergeant Maior to place anie ouerplus of broken rankes.

But heere it is to be noted, that this addition of 4. piquers in euerie ranke being drawne vp by the flanke of the Squadron as aforesaid, there doo remaine ouerplus 21. rankes, of 4. in euerie ranke, which doo in all make 84. piquers; of the which number the sergeant maior may if he dooth so thinke it requisite, draw vppe 34. rankes more of 2. in euerie ranke, by the flanke of the Squadron; which performed



performed, then the Squadron doth consist in frunt of 61. souldiors, and by flank of 34. rankes; but then there doth remaine an ouerplus of 16. souldiors, which lide number he may referue to employ in any place of seruice where he shall thinke most requisite; but if the Sergeant Maior shall not thinke it conuenient to inlarge his whole Squadron from frunt to backe with 2. souldiors in euery ranke as aforesaid: then he may with 59. souldiors taken out of the number of 84. that did before remaine, (in which number of 84. souldiors, the 16. souldiors ouerplus before remaining are conteined) increase his Squadron in number of one ranke by backe, as by drawing those 59. piquers in one ranke by the backe of the Squadron, then the Squadron from 34. that it was before, is now come to be of 35. rankes, ouerplus 25. souldiors, with which 25. souldiors and with the 10. souldiors that did first remaine of the 2100. that were reduced into the Squadron, who were to be placed in the ranke of Ensignes as aforesaid; those 10. souldiors being drawn againe from thence, and annexed vnto the 25. doo in all make 35. which 35. souldiors being drawne vp in length by the flanke of the Squadron, doo increase euery one of the 35. ranks 1. souldior in euerie ranke; so as of 59. souldiors that euery rank did consist before; they are now by this increase come to be iust 60. souldiors in euery ranke, and in rankes by flankes 35. rankes, besides the rank of Ensignes with their guard of Halbarders, that are p'aced in the midst or Centre of the Squadron: by which kinde of reducement the whole Squadron commeth to contein iust 2100. soldiors, ouerplus, 0. that is to be vnderstood, not so much as one souldiour.

And it is further to be noted that if another Squadron oflike number in frunt should come to confrunt and ioin in battle with this Squadron, and being entred into fight; and that the Coronell or Sergeant Maior, or the Lord Marshall of the field should thinke it their aduantage to charge and assaile the contrary Squadron with a flecue of

How a Lo: Mar.  
shall or a Ser-  
geant Maior  
their Squadron  
being in fight,  
should draw vp  
a flecue of  
Piquers to as-  
saile their ene-  
mies in flanke,

piquers in flanke, then the Sergeant Maior may drawe 5. or 6. rankes or more as hee thinketh good from the backe of the squadron vppe by any of both the flankes of the same squadron, but distant the length of 2. piques or more, to the intent that by that little distance of the length of 2. piques as aforesaid, when they haue marcht vp, and doo finde themselves right against the flanke of their enemies squadron, they may haue space to turne themselves and make frunt towards their enemies flank, and to close their rankes by frunt and flankes, and with y points of their piques to charge their enemies in flanke: And thus farre concerning the ordering and forming of squadrons in diuers sorts, as is before set downe.

The Squadron being formed how a Sergeant Maior should make of either of the flankes frunt, obseruing the same proportion in frunt and number of rankes by flankes, that they were before he made of flanke frunt.

It is not lawfull for any other officers of the fiede to passe on horsebacke athwart the rankes of a squadron reduced into any forme but onely the Lieutenant General, the Lord Marthall or the sergeant Maior maior of an Armie,

But now further, this squadron being thus formed into 60. souldiors in frunt, and of 35. souldiors by flanke, which is by flanke 35. rankes, then if vpon any occasion of the comming of the enemy, or vpon any other cause, the Coronell and Sergeant Maior shall thinke requisite to make of one of the flankes frunt: As for example of the left flanke frunt, and that he would reduce them into the verie same forme of squadron both in number of rankes by flanke, as also of number of souldiors in euery ranke that they were before; then the sergeant Maior ought himselfe on horsebacke if he thinke it requisite, or else to command his Lieutenant Sergeant on foot presently to goe athwart 25. rankes: not from flanke to flank, but from frunt to backe, that is to goe downe by right line betwixt the fise and thirtith soldior of his right hand, & the fise & twentieth souldior of his left hand, from frunt straight to backe; and passing through them he is to say to the souldiors that are vpon his left hand: *Keepe your selues in frunt as you are, notwithstanding that the souldiors of my right hand, doo make flank frunt*: the effect of which his words being throughout signified to the souldiors that are next vnto him of his left hand, presentlie the Captaines and their drummers that did marche in frunt before the 7. compertiments of 5. in euery compertiment as aboue is

set

set downe; are to march and goe to the left flanke, which now shall be made frunt: but the other Captaines and drummers that are in frunt before the other s. compertiments are still to keepe their places vntill they receiue further direction.

And now the Captains and their drummers of the compertimentes aforesaid beeing come before the left flanke; the Coronels drummer is first to begin to strike, and the rest immediatlie to doo the like, that all the souldiors of that left flanke are to make frunt towards the Captaines and drummers; that is, to turne their faces and weapons towards them: Or else the Sergeant Maior may command the Captaines, or in galloping or passing on horsebacke by the flanke, may himselfe say with a loud voice, *Frunt to me souldiors*: vpon which words pronounced, or vpon the sound of the drums for that purpose, all the souldiors of flanke, are presently to make frunt; and are therewithall presently to reforme their distances as well in frunt, as by flankes; which by this making of flank frunt is growne into great disproportion: which reforming of their distances as well by frunt as flanke, is to be performed by straightning their ranks in frunt and enlarging them by flanks into their conuenient and proportionate distances, either to march or fight.

Which being performed; then the Sergeant Maior to the intent to giue the more ground and roome to the other part of the Squadron of s. compertiments to reduce themselues by flanke, is to command the Coronelles Drummer and so the rest to strike a march; which doone, then the Captaines and all that part of the Squadron that haue made flanke frunt, are orderlie one ranke after another to shoulder their piques and march after their Captaines but 50. or 60. paces where the Drummers againe striking and sounding a pause; all that foresaid part of the Squadron, are presentlie one ranke after another to aduance their piques and make a stand; which being performed, then the sergeant Maiors Lieu-

but yet it is law  
full for a Coro-  
nel, or Serge-  
ant Maior to  
passe on horse-  
backe athwart  
y ranks of any  
band, or squa-  
dron that is of  
their owne Re-  
giment & not  
any other Cap-  
tain nor officer.



tenant is presently to command the drummers that doo remaine vpon the frunt of the 5. compertiments that haue not altered their frunt nor flanks, to strike a march; which being performed, he and all their capitaines must with that part of y<sup>e</sup> Squadron march certen paces straight forward, thereby to take the more compasse of ground: and then turning vpon the left hand, must draw them vp almost close by the left flanke, to the frunt of that part of the Squadron that haue already made of flanke frunt: Al which being performed according to the orders before set downe, the whole Squadron is now come againe to be in the same proportion both in number of souldiors in euery rank, as also of number of ranks by flanks that they were at the first; that is of 60. in euery rank, & 35. ranks.

How the Ensigne-bearers of the first part of the Squadron that made of flank frunt are to bring themselves againe into order.

But heere it is to be noted, that the ranke of Ensigne-bearers of the first part of the Squadron that made flanke frunt with their guardes of halbarders by this making of flanke frunt, being brought into disorder, by reason that now they are not in ranke as they were before, must presentlie vpon the stroke of the drummer commanded by the Coronels Ensigne-bearer march vp, not betwixt the ranks but through the ranks of the souldiors, till they al come betwixt the seuenteenth ranke before them, and the eighteenth ranke behinde them; and there betwixt those two ranks they must reduce themselves into order and ranke; which being by them done, then both they and the rest of the other Ensigne-bearers of that part of the Squadron that marched vppe and reduced themselves by flanke as aforesaid, being in one ranke, haue before them iust 17. ranks, and behind them 18. which in all are 35. ranks.

All which performed, then the fleeces, winges, and troupes of the different weapons of volce that did before arme the right and left flanks, and all 4. corners of the Squadron, are againe by their officers to be lead and reduced into the same forms vpon the right and left flanks, that they were before that the Squadron did make of flanke

flanke frunt; or else may be reduced into any other varietie of formes that the Coronell or Sergeant Maior shall thinke most conuenient; And so march forward if the plainnesse of the Countrie, and other requisite causes, do cause and permit them so to do.

But now it is furder to be noted that if the same Squadron accompanied with fleeces, winges, and troupes of diuers sorts of weapons of volec as aforesaid, not hauing the enemy in sight nor neare, should happen in their march to come to a straight passage; where betwixt rocks mountaines and hilles or any such like there could not passe aboue .5. soldiours in a ranke; and that there were no other open way neare by many miles for the Regiment to passe, but only the same; then the Coronell if he be alone with his Regiment of 4000. men, as aforesaid, is presently to take order that the highest partes and sides of the mountaines, rockes, & hilles be possessed of both sides of the passage, with certen numbers of harquebuziers, and some mosquetiers, as also of some light armed halbarders to backe them; that thereby the rest of the shott and Squadron of armed men may the more safelie passe through the straight; which being performed, then he is to send the one halfe of the shott of all the diuers sorts of volec y<sup>e</sup> did arme the right and left flanks of the Squadron to march before through the straight, I meane all such weapons of volec as did arme the foreparts of both the flanks and frunt of the Squadron, and not the other halfe of shott that did arme the hinder parts of the flanks, and backe of the Squadron, who are for the guard of the backe or Rereward of the Squadron, and for diuers other causes, and accidental employments to remaine hindermost and to march .5. in a ranke, and to follow the last compertiment of piquers into the straight, and that I would wish to be performed in this order and sort following: First I would send the compertiments of mosquetiers of the right flank marching according to the narrownes of the straight .5: in a ranke, and the harquebuziers of the same flanke

The order that is to be taken by a Coronell if his Squadron accompanied with fleeces, winges, and troupes of diuers sortes of weapons of volec should happen in their march to come to a straight how they should march and passe through the same.

flanke after them, backt with some light armed piquers and halbarders; then I would send the compertiments of archers likewise of the right flank marching .5. in a ranke, then I would that the compertiments of molquetiers and harquebuziers that were for the guard of the left flank marching .5. in a ranke, backt likewise with some number of light armed piquers and halbardars, should follow the archers of the right flank, and that after them should follow the archers of the forepart corner of the left flank, which different compertiments of weapons of volee of the forepart of the right flank being marcht through y<sup>e</sup> straight into the plaine, should march so far on the right hand, as there should be space and roome enough for the compertiments of the piquers of the right flank to reduce themselues into forme vpon their leste flank, and that then euerie sort ~~and~~ weapon of volee should reduce themselues into the same formes, of sleeues, winges, and troupes and other such like, as they were vpon the right corner and flank of the Squadron before that they marched into the straight: Then would I that the different Compertiments of the like weapons of volee of the forepart of the left flank of the Squadron that haue followed the first compertiments and are now likewise come through the straight, should march so much on the left hand of the plaine as they may leaue ground and space enough for the Squadron of piquers to reduce themselues into their forme betwixt them and the weapons of volee of the right flank, & that they there should again reduce themselues into the like formes of sleeues, winges, and troupes that they were vpon the forepart of the left flank before they marched through the straight. But it is to be noted, that presently vpon the entring of the last compertiments of the forepart of the weapons of volee of the left flank into the straight, that the Sergeant Maior is to come to the frunt of the right flank of the Squadron if the same flank be next vnto the passage, and he is in brieue words to say. *Single .5. in a ranke throughout from frunt*

Wher the compertiments of the weapons of volee of the forepart of the right and left flanks of the Squadron being marched through the straight, should reduce themselues into forme,



*frunt to backe and march after the last compertiment of shot through the straight, and being marched thorough into the plaine, Auance your piques and make a pause.* Vppon which his direction the Captaine with his whole compertiment of 5. in a ranke from frunt to backe is to single the same from the rest of the Squadron and to followe the shot and march into the straight; vppon the separation and marching of which compertiment, then the Sergeant Maior is to say to the Captain of the next compertiment. *Single your compertiments of 5. throughout, and follow, and march straight after the first compertiment through the straight, and being marched thorough into the plaine, double your compertiment by the left flanke of the formost compertiment of piquers,* which compertiment being something separated and marching into the straight; then vppon the same direction receaued by all the Captaines that are before the frunt of the rest of the compertiments, as well by such briefe speaches as aforesaid, as by the sound of the trompettor and drummes, they are all subsequentlie and orderlie with their compertimentes to separate them and to followe one another by right line; and as euerie one of those Captaines with their compertimentes haue marched one after another thorough the straight into the plaine; so they are with all celeritie to reduce themselves by the left flanke the one of the other into the same form of Squadron that they were before they entred into the straight; and that is, that the Captaine of the thirde compertiment of 5. in a ranke throughout, as aforesaide, seeing the seconde compertiment reduced and doubled by the leste flanke of the firste Compertiment; hee likewise is to reduce his compertiment by the leste flanke of the seconde; and so consequentlie the fourth, fifth, and all the reste of the compertiments, are by their Captaines to bee lead and reduced by the left flanks the one of the other; which being by them performed, and the Squadron reduced into the same forme of number of ranks, & of soldjors in euery

Brief speaches to be vied by the Sergeant Maior to the piquers, before they enter into the passage.

How y piquers being marched through the straight are to reduce themselves againe into their former Squadron.

ranke that it was before they entered into the straight; then all the shot of the different weapons of volec that did march through the straight before the first compertiment of piquers; I meane, the one halfe of those that before they came to the straight did arme the forepartes of the right and left flankes of the squadron, and now againe already before the squadron is altogether againe formed by their Captaines and officers, reduced into the same formes vpon the foreparts of the right and left flankes of the squadron that they were before that they first separated themselues from the squadron, and entred into the straight: And euen as those different compertiments of shot did one after another orderly march through the straight and are now againe reduced and come into their first order as aforesaid; So the different compertimentes of fleeces, winges, troupes, and other such like of different sorts of weapons of volec that did arme the right and left hinder flankes, and corners of the squadron, in the like order immediatly following the last compertiments of piquers through the straight, are presentlie againe by their officers to be reduced into the like compertimentes and formes for the guard of both the hinder flankes and backe of the squadron, that they were before the squadron did enter into the passage.

Where the  
drummers and  
phifers are to  
be placed, the  
squadron march-  
ing forward  
in the Enimies  
Countrie, the  
Enemie being  
not in sight as  
also vpon doubt  
of battle.

All which being performed, and al the harquebuziers, mosquetiers, and halbarders that were sent to possesse the tops of both the sides of the passage being come downe into the plaine, and reduced into such formes, or otherwise employed as the Coronell and Sergeant Maior shall thinke most meet, they may then begin againe to march forward. Howbeit in this place it is further to be noted that the squadron marching forward in the enemies countrie the one halfe of the drummers are to bee placed vpon the frunt, and the other halfe vpon the backe of the squadron; and that, during the time they march the enemy being not in sight; but vpon the sight and approach of the enemy and doubt of battle; then vpon that occasi-  
on

on all the drummers & phifers y did march in the frunt & back of the squadrō must presently reduce themselues, the one halfe vpon the forpart & hinder part of the right flank of y squadron, & the other halfe vpon the forpart & hinder part of y left flank of the squadron; I meane more towards al the 4. corners of the squadrō vpon both flanks, then towards the midst of those flankes; because that all their different strokes of direction, may bee the better heard and vnderstood aswell in frunt and backe as flankes :

And the cause wherefore I woulde haue no drummers placed in the frunt of a squadron vppon the occasion of battle is; that they should bee no impediment to the piquers through the greatnesse of those instruments, to vse their piques, nor vnto mosquetiers, nor harguebuziers, in case that any, vpon any occasion should be reduced vnder the guard of the frunt of the piques to vse their mosquets or harquebuzes. Besides that I would neuer permit vpon any occasion, that any drummes, or at the most aboue one drummer, and a phifer, should march in the midst of the squadron with the rank of Ensignes, because that the greatnesse of them would be an impediment to the ranks to close themselues by frunt and flankes, as vppon some occasions they ought to doo.

The cause wherefore no Drummers should bee placed in the frunt of the squadrō vpon the occasion of a battle.

Not aboue one Drōme and a Phifer are to march in the midst of a squadron with the rank of ensigne

But heere it is further to be noted that the squadron being againe reduced into forme, and marching forward in the enemies Countrie, and finding the ground in diuers partes as they march of that nature, y they cannot march in squadron formed, and hauing great intelligence by discouersers, and espialles, that the enemy is not so neere hand as that by reason and discipline military they ought to keepe themselues in squadron; then they ought according to the bredth or frunt of their squadron, to deuide the whole squadron into as few and as great compertiments of number of soldiors in euery ranke from frunt to backe as the grounds or passages will giue them leaue; that by the greatnesse of their compertiments they may a great deale the sooner reduce and forme their squadron



again vpon any sudden or great Alarum : As for example, If the squadron were double as broad in frunt as by flankes, as of 60. in frunt and 30. by flankes, then the Coronell or Sergeant Maior may presentlie command the whole squadron to be deuided into 6. compertiments of 10. souldiors in euery ranke from frunt to back throughout euery compertiment ; or if the ground be of that nature, that in some places there cannot passe aboue 7. or 8. souldiors in frunt, then he may deuide his whole squadron into 8. compertiments, that is of 4. compertiments of 7. in euery ranke, and the other 4. compertiments of 8. souldiors in euery ranke throughout euery compertiment, and by flankes, that is in length from frunt to backe euery compertiment of 30. ranks, the Ensigns alwaies placed betwixt two of the middlemost ranks of euerie compertiment, or of so many of the compertiments as shalbe requisit. All which compertiments vpon intelligence or discouery of the enemies approching may in any conuenient ground be presently incorporated and reduced by flank or flankes into the same form of squadron that it was at the first forming of the same ; or into any other forme that the Coronell or Sergeant Maior shall thinke most requisit by any one of the same orders of reducementes that I haue before very particularly set downe.

And it is furdre to be obserued that the said squadron marching in the open fields with sleeues, wings, & troups of weapons of volec belonging to the same, should euer at certen times make certen pauses, aswel to the intent to ease themselues and take breath, because that armed men or mosquetiers with their heauy furniture, or the soldiors of any other weapon cannot possibly continue any long march without such pauses and staies, as also that if anie dismarch or disorder hath hapned in their ranks, forms, or orders, the same may be presently againe reformed and redressed : And the like pauses and staies are to bee made by bands of horsmen, for the same cōsideration & causes.

But now peraduenture some that may read this place  
of

of my booke may say that I forgot in this place to write of horſemen, aſwell where they ſhould be placed in the field either vpon the flankes or corners of the compertiments of diuers ſortes of weapons of vlee reduced into their orders, as alſo in marching through the ſtraight, whether they ſhould march halfe before and halfe behind, or otherwiſe. Wherevnto I anſwer that it were impertinent to this place, conſidering that here I doo but only ſhew, how a Regiment of 4000. footmen vnder their coronels, Captaines, and officers, without any bandes of horſemen ſhould be reduced into diuers formes aſwell to march as to fight; as alſo to paſſe through a paſſage or ſtraight, and being paſſed through the ſame; howe againe to reduce themſelues into forme; that by the ordering, forming, and marching of this Squadron and regiment as aſorſaid, all ſuch as doo profeſſe armes, and that doo not knowe how ſquadrons of footmen ſhould bee formed, may by that which I haue before ſet downe, ſee, conſider, and obſerue, how any Squadron of a great deale greater or ſmaller numbers may diuers waies be reduced into form, although in troth, bands and ſquadrons of horſemen are to bee reduced into forme or diuers formes euen after the verie ſame order and ſort that bandes and ſquadrons of footmen are. But yet ſomething to ſatiſſie ſuch as ſhall reade this my booke, I will by the helpe of Almighty God, in ſome places more conuenient, of theſe diſcourſes make mention, and ſet downe diuers verie important particularities concerning the ordering, forming, and employing of bandes, ſquadrons, and diuers other formes of horſemen of ſundrie ſortes of armours and weapons.

But now peradventure ſome will with more reaſon furder demand where the baggages and carriages of the Regiment that I haue not hithervnto mentioned, ſhoulde bee placed in marching through the ſtraight: and how the ſame ſhould be guarded; as alſo where the field peeces of the ſame regiment, if there be any ſhould be

H. 3.

placed

An obiection  
answered.

Bands and  
ſquadrons of  
horſemen are  
to be reduced  
into forme af-  
ter the verie  
ſame order and  
ſorte that foot-  
men are.

Wherevpon y  
squadron for-  
med and mar-  
ching forward  
y field peeces  
are to be pla-  
ced & drawne.

placed vpon the Squadron formed ; and in what conue-  
nient place or places they should be with their horses, or  
oxen drawne, and go through the said straights. Where-  
vnto I say that in case there were 8. field peeces belonging  
to the Regiment, that is, 4. fawcons of the Caliuier of 5.  
pound the bullet, and 4. fawconets of the Caliuier of 3.  
pound the bullet; I would then vpon the Squadron, for-  
med and marching forward, that 2. peeces (viz) one faw-  
con, and one fawconet should with their horses be drawn  
vpon the flanke, or side of the Squadron, betwixt the  
fleeces of the weapons of volec and the Squadron, I mean  
vpon the forepart of the right flanke; and so likewise an-  
other fawcon, and fawconet to be drawne by the hinder  
part of the same flanke likewise betwixt the weapons of  
volec and the Squadron, and euen in the same manner, in  
the like places, order and sort I would haue the other 4.  
fawcons, and fawconets to be drawn vpon the left flanks  
of the Squadron ready vpon all occasions to be drawne  
forward and placed, the 4. formost that were vpon the  
formost right and left flanke of the Squadron somewhat  
distant or wide from the 2. forecorners of the Squadron,  
or vpon some occasions vpon the very frunt of the same  
Squadron readie to be discharged at the enimie appro-  
ching, and so likewise the 4. peeces that are drawne by  
the hinder flankes of the Squadron are readie likewise to  
be placed vpon the frunt or both the corners of the back  
or rereward of the same square, in case that the Squadron  
vpon any accident or comming of the Enimie should  
make of back frunt: And heere it is to bee noted that all  
these 8. field peeces must bee accompanied with their  
gonners, officers, and all other their assistants, with some  
numbers of pioners, and with all kind of thinges and In-  
struments belonging to them, as bullets, ladles, rammers,  
and other such like, as also with a large and sufficient  
quantitie of good powder well guarded by some number  
of halbarders, and archers from the danger of fire.

Officers and o-  
ther necessarie  
prouision be-  
longing to the  
field peeces.

Howbeit vpon the occasion of marching through a  
straight



straight as aforesaid; then I would that .4. of these field peeces with their powder, bullets, and all other things requisite should vpon their carriages be drawen with their horses, conducted by their Carters, gonners, and pioners and guarded and accompanied as aforesaid, iust betwixt the last troupes, and compertiments of weapons of volec, and the first compertiment of piques; and so likewise that the other .4. field peeces that did before march vpon both the hinder flankes of the Squadron, should vnder the conduction of their gonners and assistants as aforesaid with their powder, bullets and al other things necessarie, march through the straight in Rereward iust betwixt the hindermost compertiment of piquers, and before the formost troupe or compertiment of the weapons of volec, that did and are againe to arme the hinder partes of both the flankes of the said Squadron; and those .8. peeces marching in the order and sort as aforesaid are most readie againe vpon the whole Regiment being past through the straights, and the reducing againe of the same into the forme of Squadron first about set downe, to be placed and drawne as they were at the first before the regiment entered into the straights: But incase that the Coronell being entered into the straights should doubt to be assailed by the enemy either in vauntguard or in Rereward; then hee ought to place a couple of sawcons, or offawcones either in frunt or in backe as he doubteth to be assailed, with some conuenient quantitie of powder, and bullets, and other things necessarie strongly guarded and accompanied with some numbers of archers, light armed piquers, and halbarders, as also some mosequeters, so that those soldiours of weapons of fire do not come too neare the powder belonging to those field peeces; and in y<sup>e</sup> sort, those .2. field peeces are to be drawne by their horses and accompanied with their gonners pioners and guardes of diuers sorts of weapons as aforesaid, in frunt and backe according to the occasion.

Where the field peeces with their munitions and other things belonging vnto them are to be placed in marching through the straight.

How the Coronell is to place the field peeces incase he doubt to be assailed either in vauntguard or Rereward.

And now concerning the most conuenient and sure placing

Concerning  
the most conue-  
nient and sure  
placing of the  
carriages and  
baggages in  
passing  
through the  
straight.

Diuers things  
to be conside-  
red of, for the  
sure placing of  
the carriages &  
baggages.

Where the  
Coronell is to  
place the car-  
riages and bag-  
gages in case he  
doubt to be as-  
sailed by the  
enemy in Rere-  
ward or in  
Vauntgard or  
in both.

Where the car-  
riages of the  
chief substance  
of powder are  
to marche.

placing of the cariages and baggages of the Regiment, I meane for the passing through the straight; for the placing and marching whereof, it is first to be considered, whether they expect, or doubt the enemy more in front and vauntgard when they shall be passing, or passed through the straight, or in backe and Rereward when they are entring & entered into the straight; or that they doubt to be assailed both in vauntgard and Rereward: Now if in case they doubt to be assailed by the enemy in Rereward, then the Coronell is to commande all the carriages and baggages to be placed in the midst of the weapons of vollee y are in vauntgard with some conuenient numbers of light armed piquers and halbarders for y better guard of the same; but in case that they doubt to be assailed in vauntgard and not in Rereward, then they are to place the cariages in the midst of the shott of the Rereward accompanied with some light armed piquers and halbarders as aforesaid; But if they doubt to be assailed both in vauntguard and Rereward, then the Coronell is to commaund all the cariages and baggages to be placed in the midst betwixte al the compertiments of piquers, I meane the one halfe of the piquers before, and y other halfe behind the carriages; euerie Carre, or waggon hauing two harquebuziers or archers for y guard of them. Howbeit here it is to be noted that the cariages of the chiefe substance <sup>and bolle</sup> of the powder that doth belong to the Regiment be they waggons or Carres that do carrie the same, do with their officers, Carters, and pyoners march either formost of all the rest of the Carriages, or else hindermost of them all; or else vpon some occasions haife before and halfe behind as the Coronell vpon any occasion shall thinke most conuenient, but in any wise a conuenient waie distant from all the rest of the carriages, and that the same carriages of powder be well accompanied with some good numbers of archers and halbarders, but with no harquebuziers nor mosquetiers, thereby to auoid all accidents of fire. Also euerie Wagó or Carre ought to haue

haue a couer of the hides or skinnes of buffes made of such largenesse that the same may couer all the barrels of powder from wet, as also that such couers of buffe wil resist the force and furie of all kind of bals and other inuentions of artificiall fires and wilde fire, which peculiar property the skins of those beasts haue aboue all others.

Euerie waggon or Carre ought to be couered with Buff hides

A peculiar property of the skins of Buffes.

And now as I haue very particularly shewed howe a Squadron of 2100. should be reduced into form in diuers different sortes, and that the same Squadron consisting of 2100. armed men piquers is now last of all reduced into 60. souldiors in frunt, which is intended in euery rank frō frunt to back, and 35. soldiors by flank, which is to be vnderstood 35. ranks; which proportion of Squadron is broader in number of piquers in frunt, then long by flanks, by more then a third part, which by most Sergeants Maiors is esteemed to bee of a great deale greater aduantage to fight, for diuers causes and reasons (which heere I omit) then any iust squadrons of armed men are; by reason that squadrons that are iust square in number of men; that is, as many piquers by flank as in frunt, are accounted to bee out of proportion; and that in respect that such squadrons are a great deale longer by flankes then broad in frunt, because that the distaunces betwixt ranke and ranke bee it either to march or fight, are a great deale more then they are betwixt euery soldior and soldior in frunt, which is to bee vnderstood in euerie ranke; So to satisfie such as would vnderstand of the forming of a iust Squadron of piquers: I meane a iust square of like numbers of men in frunt, flankes and backe as aforesaid; and not a iust square in ground, I would take 6600. piquers, which number I would command y<sup>e</sup> sergeant Maior, Maior, to draw out of 4. or 5. regiments, & to reduce them into 12. compertiments, euery cōpertiment of 55. in frunt & 60. by flanks, which maketh iust 3300. piquers in euery compertiment; al which 12. cōpertiments of 300. piquers in euery compertiment, beeing reduced into Squadron either by doubling those compertiments by back, or by flank or flanks,

Squadrons by more then a third part broader in frunt then long by flanks, are of a far greater aduantage to fight, then iust Squadrons.

Why squadrons that are iust square in number of men are thought to be out of proportion.

How to forme a Squadron of piquers iust square in number of men both by frunt and flankes



or any other waies, as I haue before very particularlie set downe; doo come to be a iust squadron of 60. piquers by frunt, flanks, and backe, ouerplus not any one souldior.

The reasons  
that diuers me  
of warre do al  
leage to proue  
a iust squadron  
to be of grea-  
test aduun-  
tage to fight.

And this kind of iust square of armed men by frunt, flanks, and backe, hath beene holden by some men of warre, and yet is, to be the most strong and puissant kind of squadron of all others, in respect that the number of rankes by flanks are equall with the number of souldiors in frunt and backe; whereof ensueth (say they) vppon the ioyning of two squadrons, and a battle well fought, that commonlie many of the souldiors of the first rankes are either ouerthrowne & wounded, or slain in the place: vpon which accidents, the souldiors that are in the next rankes directlie behind them, are presently to bestride them; I meane to stand ouer and defend them if they be but wounded, and if they be slaine, then to take their places; and so subsequentlie euery hinder ranke to fill vp the ranke before them; so as only the hinder ranks shal come to diminish and lacke number, by the supplying and filling vp of the former ranks: By meanes of which entring of souldiors out of the hinder rankes still to fill vppe the formost rankes for the causes aforesaid, the opinion of some men of warre hath been and is, that a iust squadron of armed men, is of more resistance and annoyance against the enemie, then a broad squadron in frunt and shorter by flanks is, I meane both the one squadron and the other being neere about one number of souldiors; Besides all which it may bee alleaged, that such iust squadrons in frunt, flanks, and backe, are more ready vppon any sudden vnlooked for occasion, and comming of the Enemie to make of any of both the flanks frunt, with a conuenient breadth; then a squadron that is broad in frunt, and narrow by flanks is able to performe, by reason that the iust squadron hath no more to doo, but to make of one of the flanks frunt by turning their faces and weapons that waies, and to reforme their distaunces by frunt and flanks: whereas the broad squadron to make

of

of flanke frunt, must not onely doo the like, but also must draw out a great sort of rankes from the contrary flanke, and draw them vp to the head of that flanke, that is nowe made frunt, and also reforme themselues in their distances by frunt and flanke, with diuers other particularities by me at large before set downe.

But incase that the sergeant Maior when he hath fourmed this iust square of men, and not of ground as aforesaid, shall vpon any occasion thinke it requisite to inlarge the same squadron in frunt, that is to increase euery rank from frunt to back with some conuenient number of souldiors, and to shorten the same squadron by flanke, that is to make fewer rankes; then hee may with great celeritie and dexteritie draw out as many rankes from the back or rereward, as hee shall see requisite to inlarge the frunt withall, and draw them vp by one of the flankes: But because the squadron commeth to be shortned by flankes, by so many rankes as the Sergeant Maior hath drawne out from the backe or Rereward, and therefore that there shal remaine an ouerplus of broken rankes more then at one time can be drawne vp by flankes as aforesaid: the sergeant Maior then must consider whether the numbers of the piquers of those broken rankes, be sufficient to increase one ranke more by backe: And incase there doo lacke number to performe the same; then hee is to consider whether the numbers of the piquers of those broken rankes, will serue to increase euery ranke one souldior or more by flanke; which is to be vnderstood from frunt to backe; and as he may with those broken rankes best performe either the one or the other, he is to doo the same. But incase that the Sergeant Maior shall see that the armed men of those broken rankes doo lacke number to performe as well that by flanke, as the other by backe (as aforesaid,) hee then is to place them in the ranke of Ensignes, or otherwise to employ them in other seruices as he shall thinke most requisite: The particularities of all which with many more I haue before set downe at large,

How a Sergeant Maior hauing formed a iust square may vpon any occasion shorten the same by flankes and inlarge them in frunt.

and therefore it were superfluous to particular the same againe. And now as I haue formed this foresaid battle and iust square of 60. piquers in frunt, flanks, and backe, which in all do amount to 6600. men, with diuers other requisite matters: Euen so by the like orders of reduction, If a Lord Marshall or a Sergeant Maior Maior, haue 4000. or 5000. yea or 10000. or more or fewer piquers to reduce into one bodie of Squadron, hee may reduce them into a battle of a thirde part broader in frunt then by flanks; or double as broad or more in frunt then by flanks; or otherwise as he thinketh most conuenient: As for example; If he haue 5355. piquers, and that hee would reduce them all into one Squadron, double as broad or more by frunt then by flanks, as of 105. piquers in frunt, and but of 51. rankes by flanks; and that hee would reduce his Squadron into form, by compertiments throughout of 5. in a ranke; he shall then finde that 21. compertimentes reduced into Squadron by flanke or flanks as aforesaid, will forme that Squadron, of 105. piquers in euerie rank from frunt to backe, and of 51. rankes by flanks.

Or if the Sergeant Maior, be disposed to forme the same Squadron of the like number of 5355. piquers with greater compertiments as of 7. in euerie compertiment throughout from frunt to back, that thereby he may form his Squadron with the fewer compertimentes; hee may then command all the Captains or leaders of the piquers to reduce euerie one of their compertimentes into 7. in a rank throughout from frunt to back; and then he shal find that 15. such compertiments or diuisions of 7. in a ranke throughout euerie compertiment reduced into Squadron either by the flanks the one of the other, or by both flanks subsequently al at one time, (as I haue in the beginning of this proiect of Squadrons very particularlie declared) doo make iust 105. piquers in frunt, and 51. rankes by flanke, which is more then double as broad in frunt, then long by flanks.

But



But because peradventure there are some professing armes not knowing how squadrons should be fourmed that will imagine, that it is a matter of farre greater difficultie to forme a squadron of 10000. or 12000. piquers, or of greater numbers, then of 3000. or 4000. Therevnto I say, that the orders and waies of reducing of 3000. or 4000. or of 10000. or any greater numbers into one bodie of squadron is all one, saving that the compertimentes or diuisions of piquers, or of piquers and short weapons to forme great squadrons must be longer by flankes, then the compertimentes of small squadrons are: and therefore whereas the number of piquers of one bande, or companie are sufficient to make a compleat compertiment of number of piquers by frunt, as of 5. 6. 7. or any such euen or odde numbers, not exceeding 10. or 11. as also of numbers of rankes conuenient by flankes to beginne the squadron withall; and that so likewise the piquers of other such single bandes are able to performe the like, beeing reduced by the flankes the one of the other as afore said, whereof it shoulde come to passe that such small squadrons should bee composed of the compertiments of single bands by themselves: yet great squadrons or battles double as broad in frunt, as long by flankes, or iust squares, or any other formes, must bee composed of compertimentes although of like numbers in frunt as afore saide: yet much longer by flankes, which to performe, because no one band haue piquers enough to make a compertiment of so great a number as is requisite with celeritie to forme so great a squadron; the Sergeant Maior in that case is to commaund the piquers of 2. bandes presentlie to bee reduced into one compertiment, and so likewise of other bandes, to the intent that by such great compertiments he may with the more celeritie forme his squadron; in such sort, as if a Lorde Marshall or a Sergeant Maior Maior, were disposed to forme and reduce his squadron of 10000. or 12000. piquers, or any greater, or smaller numbers into one

The orders and waies of reducing of 3000. or 4000. or of 10000. or of any greater number of piquers into one bodie of squadron, are all one saving that the compertiments are to be made longer by flankes.

squadron or battle; and that hee would forme the same double as broad by frunt as long by flankes; hee may by the like order of reducing of compertimentes of greater numbers by flankes, performe the same with as great facilitie, as hee did in the reducing of the other squadrons of smaller numbers with the compertiments of single bands into forme.

And therefore if a Sergeant Maior Maior would forme one battle of aboute 10000. piquers, and that hee would make them double as broad or more in frunt then long by flankes: As for example, of 143. in frunt, and of 71. rankes by flankes; he is first to consider how many compertiments of euen and od numbers wil make that frunt, and he shall find that 17. compertiments of 8. souldiors in euery ranke from frunt to backe, and of 71. rankes by flankes in euery compertiment reduced into squadron by flanke or flankes (as I haue verie particularlie in my first forming of squadrons before declared) doo make y<sup>e</sup> squadron in frunt 136. souldiors, and then drawing vppe another compertiment of odde number, as of 7. souldiors in euery ranke throughout the whole compertimente from frunt to back, in all are 17. compertiments of euen numbers of 8. and one of 7. which are odde, which in all are 18. compertiments. All which diuisions reduced into squadron by flankes as aforesaid, the whole squadron so formed, dooth come to be of 143. souldiors in frunt, and 71. rankes by flankes, which in all doo make 10153. souldiors.

But now whereas all these squadrons before reduced and described do consist only of piquers with a few halbardiers for the guard of the Ensignes, which hath bene altogether vsed of late yeares by the Italians & Spaniards in respect (as I haue heard them say) that such squadrons all of one weapon are mor readilie reduced into squadron, then of two different weapons, and therewithall more beawtifull and terrible in the sight of the Enemy in shewe, through the equalitie of the length of the

The chiefe  
causes why the  
Italians and  
Spaniards,  
haue of late  
vsed squadrons  
altogether of  
piques.

the piques, then if there were many rankes of short weapons within the piques, which through the shortnes of the weapons would make the squadron to shewe vnto the Enemie as though there were a voide place without any soldiours in the midst of the piques: Yet because many yeares past I haue in Fraunce seene the Sergeants Majors of the Suissers reduce certen rankes of halbardiers within their piques, thereby according to discipline to strengthen their battles aswell against the charges of horsemen as against squadrons of footmen piquers: I will here (with the helpe of Almighty God) sett downe and shew how a squadron of halbardiers or battleaxes, enuironed or impaled about with 5. rankes of piquers in frunt, flanks and backe, should be reduced into a squadron broader by a third parte in frunt and backe, then long by flanks: which is to be performed in this sort following, that is, In case that I haue .1500. armed battleaxes, or halbardiers, and that I were disposed to reduce them into .50 in frunt, and .30. by flanks, and that I would deuide that whole number into .10. compertiments of 5. battleaxes in euery ranke throughout euery compertiment: so as euery compertiment from frunt to backe should containe 150. battleaxes; Or that I were disposed to commaund the .1500. battleaxes to be reduced into .5. compertiments of 10. souldiours in euery ranke throughout euery compertiment from frunt to backe, that is of 300. souldiours in euery compertiment, the same being by the captaines and officers performed, I then appointing the ground where I would make the frunt of the squadron, would commaund the Captaines or leaders of euery compertiment either of .5. if the compertiments be all of .5. or of .10. if they be of .10. soldiours throughout euery compertiment to march vp, the one by the <sup>left</sup> flanke of the other, vntill they come all to make one equall frunt in their iust & proportionate distances from frunt to backe: which being performed then I would commaund two compertiments all of piquers, each one of them of .150.

How a Squadron of halbardiers enuironed about, with 5. rankes of piquers, should be reduced into forme.



marching. 5. in a ranke to be drawne vp, the one compertiment of. 150. close by the right flanke of the battleaxes: and the other compertiment of the like number in like sort close by the left flanke of the battleaxes vntill the formost rankes of both those compertiments of piquers vpon both flanks be of equal frunt with the frunt of the battleaxes, and their last ranke equall with the last ranke of the battleaxes, which being performed, then of 50. battleaxes that they were in frunt before, now by the conioining and reducing of those 2. compertiments of piquers vpon the two flanks as aforesaid, the squadron is come to be of 60. soldiours in euery ranke from frunt to backe; which performed, then would I commaund 300. piquers reduced into 60. rankes of 5. in euery ranke to be drawne close by the frunt of the squadron of battleaxes & piquers before reduced, euen from the one flanke and corner to the other: And at the very same instant, I would cominand 60. ranks of piquers more of 5. in euery ranke to be drawne close by the backe, and Rereward of the same squadron: which being performed, then aswell the 60. ranks of piquers 5. in a ranke in frunt, as the 60. ranks of piquers 5. in a ranke in backe, are either vpon the sound of the trumpet, or the stroake of drummes to tourne their faces and weapons, and to make of flanke frunt: I meane that waies that the squadron of battleaxes, and the piquers on the flanks do make frunt, and therewithall presently to reforme themselues in their distances: so as of 60. rankes of 5. in euerie ranke that the same compertiment of piquers that was reduced in frunt was before, it is now by making of flanke frunt as aforesaid, become to be of 5. rankes of 60. soldiours in euery ranke: And so likewise the aforesaid compertiments of the like number of 300. piquers of 5. in euery ranke reduced vpon the backe of the squadron, by making of flanke frunt, towards the squadron of battleaxes and piquers, are now likewise become to be 5. rankes by flanke, and 60. in euerie ranke. All which being performed the squadron of battleaxes doth

dooth come to be enuironed or empaled with 5. rankes of piquers in frunt, flankes, and back, the whole Squadron containing in frunt 60. foldiors, & by flankes 40. rankes.

And now this Squadron being thus formed; then would I reduce all the different sortes of weapons of volec into their most conuenient forms of forlorn hopes, of sleeues, of winges, of hearfes, of troupes, and other formes, according to the nature and effect of euery different sort of weapon, and as the comming of the enemy should require, or as the ground or groundes would permit, hauing therewithall regard aswel to arme the backe or reeward of the Squadron with weapons of volec, as to arme the frunt and flankes. And as I haue very particularly shewed how a Squadron of Halbardiers or battleaxes, enuironed about with 5. rankes of piquers should be reduced into the forme aboue described, and therewithall said that the same should be armed in frunt, flankes and back, with weapons of volec of diuers sorts, so would I if I had conuenient numbers of horsemen of diuers armors and weapons, arme the same Squadron, and sleeues, & winges of weapons of volec, with horsemen in their due & most conuenient places and formes.

But because I doo thinke that it shall be a farre greater instruction for such Gentlemen of our Nation, as doo not know and yet are willing and desirous to learne how diuers Squadrons or battles of footemen with their weapons of volec and field peeces ought to bee armed with many hearfes, squares, and troupes of horsemen of diuers sorts of armors and weapons, and those conueniently placed in the large and open fieldes to giue battle and fight with the Enemy, with their moste aduantage, then to place onely one Squadron of footemen with their Weapons of volec, and to arme the same with horsemen of diuers sortes, I doo for example say, that if there were in the enemies Countrey 28000. or 30000. horsemen & footmen of our English Nation, well sorted, armed, weaponed, and exercised, according to the

K

nature

How to reduce  
an English Ar-  
mie of 28000.  
or 30000. horse-  
men and foot-  
men into form  
of batle, readie  
in all points to  
fight with the  
Enemy.

nature and effect of euery different sort of weapon : And that the same Armie of 28000. did consist of the different weapons and numbers vnder written, that is of 4500 piquers, 8500. battleaxes, or halbardiers, of 10000. weapons of vlee, of the which I would haue 7000. good archers, 1500. mosquetiers, and 1500. harquebuziers; Of horsemen also I would haue 5000. of the which there should be 240. men at Armes, 480. Dimilaunces, 1680. Stradiots, 1300. archers on horsebacke, and 1300. crossbowers on horsebacke; and all those aswell horsemen as footmen sorted and deuided into their different proportions and numbers vnder their standards, Ensignes, pennons and Guydons, as also vnder their Coronels, Captaines, Conductors, and other higher and lower men of charge and officers; and that I were by the commandement and appointment of the Lord Lieutenant Generall to giue order and reduce the said Armie into a forme of battle, as if it were presentlie to fight with the enemy, I would then take of those 8500. battleaxes or halbardiers, 6000. and out of the 4500. piquers I would take 3600. and would deuide and reduce all those numbers of piquers and battleaxes into 3. battles, that is, into a vauntguard, a battle, & a Rereward, or rather into foure battles, that is into a vauntgard, a battle, and a Rereward, and into a fourth which I would tearme and call by the name of an a Rerewardrereward: euery one of which foure battles should consist of 1500. armed halbardiers or battleaxes, and of 900. armed piquers, which are iust 2400. piquers and battleaxes in each battle: And as for the ouerplus of the whole number of the halbardiers or battleaxes, which in all doo amount to 2500. as also the ouerplus of the piquers which are 900. (none of both which numbers are to enter into the squadrons afore mentioned) I would reserue to be employed in such other seruices as heereafter shall be mentioned: And I would that each one of the said 4. battles should conteine 60. souldiours in euery ranke from frunt to backe and 40. rankes by flanks:

Howe many  
battles y whole  
Armie, should  
be deuided and  
reduced into,



flanks: And that all the battleaxes should bee enuironed and empaled in frunt, flanks and backe, with 5. ranks of piquers, euen in the very same forme and sort that I haue before particulerlie reduced and formed the laste Squadron before described.

But because diuers Squadrons being reduced into form in the open fields where battles most conueniently are to be fought, are to be placed in diuers sorts, as sometimes all in a manner of one equall frunt with their sleeues and winges and other formes of weapons of vollee, and sometimes also the vauntgard, aduaunced a good distance before and nearer to the enimie then the battle and Reregard, who are in winges more retired, ready vppon all needfull occasions to succour and aide the foremost battle: And at other times the vauntgard, and Reregard aduaunced beyond and nearer to the enimie then the principall battle, which remaineth either in wing retired, or otherwise placed according to the nature of the ground and comming of the enemy, or according to some other order and commandement of the Generall, readie vpon all occasions to succour the other two battles, that are ready to enter into fight: So would I place those foresaid 4. battles in this sort following.

First, I would place the vauntgard and Reregard both of one equall frunt, but yet so farre distant the one from the other, as that there might be ground & place enough betwixt them to reduce so many troupes, sleeues, wings, and other formes of all the different sorts of weapons of vollee footmen, belonging to those two battles, as ought to bee (according to the disposition of the ground and comming of the Enemie) reduced and placed vppon the outer flanks and corners of those 2. battles: And I would that of the 2500. halbardiers before reserved and not placed, one thousand deuided into 2. partes of 500. halbardiers in each part should be placed in many little societies and troupes of ten halbardiers in euery societie, some in guard of the field pceces belonging to those two battles,

The placing of  
the seuerall  
battles of the  
Armie.

and all the rest behind in Rereward at the backes of the troupes and winges of the weapons of vlee, ready vpon any occasion to succour them and to annoy the enemy: I meane that the said 1000. halbarders deuided into 2. parts of 500. in each part, that the one 500. deuided and placed in their little troupes as aforesaid, should bee for the succour and guard of the weapons of vlee of the vaungard, and the other 500. should bee for the succor & guard of the weapons of vlee of the Reregard, which performed, then would I place the other two squadrons of battle and a Rereregardrereward in two wings, but not so farre forward as the hindermost rankes of the two foremost battles by 150. paces or more, with all theyr different sortes of weapons of vlee, reduced into their most conuenient formes, with one thousand Halbardiers also taken out of the 1500. yet remaining vnplaced, equallie deuided 500. to each battle for the guard of the field peeces and succor of the weapons of vlee as is before more at large set downe: And those twoe hindermost battles I would also place of one equall frunt, that is, the one as farre forward as the other, but so farre seperated and distant the one from the other, and so farre without and in winge, the one on the right hande, and the other on the lefte hand of the two foremost battles, as that all the different sortes of weapons of vlee belonging to the two inner flankes of those two hindermost squadrons, might not onelie haue roome inough to bee reduced into their most conuenient formes, according to the nature & different dispositions and effects of euery sort of them, but also in such sort, as that both those two hindermost battles with all their weapons of vlee might (without any impediment of the two foremost battles and their weapons of vlee, or of any their hearsees, troupes, or squares of horsmen) haue the comming of the enemies battles, and squares, and troupes of horsmen, so apparant and cleare in their sightes, as that they might succour and aide the said two foremost battles vpon all needfull and requisit occasions and causes.

All

All which reducements of those foresaid 4. battles, being by the Coronels, Sergeant Maiors, Captaines and other officers with great order and celeritie perfourmed: then I hauing such conuenient numbers of men at armes, of dimilaunces, of Stradiots, of Archers and Crosbowers on horsebacke (as are before particularlie set downe) to arme the flankes of the aforesaid foure battles: I would first giue order that the 240. men at Armes shoulde be deuided into 4. winges, that is into 60. men at Armes in each wing, euery which number of 60. men at Armes, I would reduce either into 3. rankes of 20. in euery ranke, or else into 4. rankes of 15. in euerie ranke, and would place two of those hearfes or broad squares of men at Armes, the one euen by flanke and right ouer againste the middest of the right flanke of the vauntgarde, and the other broad square or hearfe of men at Armes in like sort, euen by flanke and right ouer against the middest of the leste flanke of the Rereward; And so likewise in the very same order I would place the other two broad squares of men at Armes, the one by flanke right ouer against the midst of the right flanke of the principall battle, and the other broad square by flanke, right ouer against the middest of the left flanke of the a. Rereward-rereward.

How & where  
the men at  
Armes should  
be ordered and  
placed.

But yet it is to be vnderstood by this before written that I would place all those 4. hearfes or broad squares of men at Armes, so farre distaunt in winge from all the flankes of those foresaid 4. Battles, and so farre wide and cleare from all the Sleeues, Winges, and Troupes of the Weapons of Volee footemen, as that those hearfes of men at Armes might vppon all good occasions offered, giue a charge vppon the Enemie, bee they horsemen or footmen without any waies troubling the Weapons of volce, or receiuing any trouble or let by the Weapons of Volee to giue their charges with great order: And therewithal that vpon their charges giuen, they may retire to giue new charges without disordering



their owne weapons of vlee, or any waies troubling the ranks of their owne squadrons of armed footmen.

The ordering  
and placing of  
the Dimilaun-  
ces.

The dimilaunces also belonging to those men at Armes (which according to discipline ought to bee in number double as manie as the men at Armes) which is that the men at Armes being 240. the dimilaunces ought to bee 480. which number of 480. Launces, I would deuide into 4. broad squares or hearfes, of 120. in euerie hearfe, euerie which number of 120. dimilaunces, I would reduce either into 4. ranks of 30. in euerie ranke, or else into 5. ranks of 24. Launces in euerie ranke, and would place two of those winges, the one by flanke in a manner euen with the right flank of the hearfe or wing of the men at Armes reduced vpon the right flank of the vauntgard, and the other wing of dimilaunces in a manner euen by flanke, with the left flank of the wing of the men at armes that are reduced vpon the left flanke of the reregard: But yet both those two winges of dimilaunces I would place a little aduanced more forward then the winges of the men at Armes, and so farre distant by flanke from both the foresaide winges of the men at Armes, as that there might be ground and roome enough betwixt them, for fixe little troupes or societies, I meane two troupes or societies of archers on horsebacke, and 4. troupes of Cross-bowers on horsebacke of 10. in euerie societie, to place themselues in their troups in conuenient distances separated and oblique each one troupe from the other, readie vpon any charge by the Launces or men at Armes giuen or vnto them by the Enemie offered, to galloppe by the flanks of the Launces or of the men at Armes, but something more backe and in Rereward of them, and to giue their vleees of quarrels and arrowes at the enemie, before the Launces or men at Armes should come to ioinc and shooke with the enemies horsmen, or charge their footmen, or otherwise to giue their vleees at any squadrons or troupes of horsmen or footmen, according to any other order and commandement vnto them by their superiors giuen.

And

And in like sort as I haue placed those 2. winges of dimilaunces with their troupes of Crosbowers and archers on horsbacke betwixt them and the flankes of the 2. forme-  
 moste winges of men at Armes as aforesaid; Euen so  
 would I in the verie same sort place the other two winges  
 of dimilaunces of 120. in each winge reduced, either into  
 4. rankes of 30. in euerie ranke, or else into 5. rankes of  
 24. in euerie ranke, almost euen and right ouer against, sa-  
 uing a little more aduanced forward, then the flankes of  
 the two hindermost winges of the men at Armes, that  
 are reduced the one vpon the right flanke of the princi-  
 pall battle, and the other vpon the left flanke of the a Re-  
 reregard-Rereward, with the like numbers of troupes or  
 societies of Crosbowers & archers on horsbacke betwixt  
 them, (euerie little troupe of those weapons of vollee se-  
 perated and oblique in distances the one from the other,)  
 as are reduced and placed betwixt the flankes of the .4.  
 formost winges of men at armes and dimilaunces. All  
 which with great order being performed, then of al y rest  
 of the numbers of Stradiots, of archers on horsbacke,  
 and Crosbowers on horsbacke, which in all do amount to  
 4040. I would take out 60. stradiots 40. Crosbowers, &  
 40. archers on horsebacke, which are in all 140. horse-  
 men, which numbers I would reserue for such other em-  
 ployments as hereafter shalbe mentioned, and would de-  
 uide the rest which in all are 3900. stradiots, Crosbowers  
 and archers on horsebacke into 3. diuisions or parts that  
 is into .1300. in each diuision, in euerie which .1300. I  
 would there should be like numbers of euerie one of those  
 3. foresaid different sorts of weapons, or as neare therea-  
 bouts as they could be deuided: which done, then would  
 I appoint one of those .3. partes of different sorts of light  
 horsemen, which are in number 1300. to arme the right  
 flanke of the winge of dimilaunces that are vpo the right  
 flanke of the men at Armes which do arme the righte  
 flanke of the vauntgard. And I would giue order to all the  
 Captaines & Conductors of al the aforesaid light horse-  
 men

The ordering  
 and placing of  
 the Stradiots,  
 and Archers, &  
 Crosbowers on  
 horsebacke.

men of the first 1300. that they should deuide and reduce all the numbers of their stradiots, of Crosbowers and archers on horsebacke into little troupes and societies of tennes & fiftens in euerie troupe, and that euerie societie and troupe should be of distincte and like weapons by themselves, and that euerie one of those societies should be lead by the heads and chiefe of their societies, & that all the troupes of stradiots Crosbowers and archers on horsebacke, should be placed and aduanced in winge more furdur forward towards the Enemy, then the hearie or winge of dimilaunces: And I would also that all the societies of the weapons of volec, I meane the archers and Crosbowers on horsebacke, should be placed & aduanced before and nearer to the Enemy by some 10. 15. or 20. paces, then the troupes and societies of stradiots, and that the troupes of archers should not march altogether by themselves, without any troupes of Crosbowers amongst or betwixt them, in respect that they are different kindes of weapons, but I would that the troupes of archers and Crosbowers should march in their troupes seperated, but yet in their troupes intermingled about 15. or. 20. paces distant one troupe from another, which is to be vnderstood a troupe of archers and a troupe of Crosbowers, and a troupe of archers & a troupe of Crosbowers and so the rest, some troupes fiftene, some twentie paces one from another and those not all of one equal frunt, but oblique the one to the other, I meane some aduanced furdur forward towards the Enemy, and others more backward in winge and Reregard Retired; And that I would to the intent that when the formost societies and troupes of weapons of volec, had giuen their volces of quarrels and arrowes either at horsemen, or footmen their Enemies, and that they were casting about againe and retiring to giue place to other troupes of weapons of volec to second and succeed them: that then some other troupes of weapons of volec that are in winge Reregard of them, should in their troupes put spurres to  
their



their horses and aduance themselves forward and seconde and supplie their fellowes places retired, with new volees. And I would also that euerie three societies of Crosbowers and Archers on horsebacke, should haue one troupe of 10. of 15. of 20. or 25. stradiots with their double headed Launces continuallie vppon all charges and other seruices to attend vppon them in Reregard, some 15. or 20. paces distaunt, ready vpon any occasion to aduance themselves forward and succour them, as also vpon the disordering or ouerthrowe of the Enemie to followe the Chace, and doo execution vppon their Enemies disordered or broken, bee they horsemen or footmen.

And I would that no societie nor troupe of Archers nor Crosbowers on horseback should be vnder the number of 10. nor aboute the number of 15. nor that any troupe of Stradiots should exceed the number of 25. nor be vnder the number of 10. And to the intent that euerie troupe of Stradiots should knowe vppon which 3. troupes of Crosbowers and Archers they should attend, as also that euerie 3. troupes of Archers, and Crosbowers should giue their charges and volees and make their Retraites, and worke all other effectes in the fild together, it were conuenient that euerie 4. troupes of stradiots, archers, and Crosbowers on horseback, and their Conductors, should alwaies lodge in their quarters in Campe together, but I meane not that the societies of archers, of Crosbowers, and stradiots should lodge all in one hale or tent together, but that the hailes and tents of euerie different sort of weapon of euerie such 4. troupes should be placed one next vnto another, and that al their Cariages vpon any remoue of campe should march together, and that all the Conductors and the chiefs of the societies of tennes, as also all their soldiors of euerie different sort of weapon, shuld know, frequent & keep company one with another in Campe, & should vow to liue  
L and

and die together, as if they were but one kind of weapon, societie and Camerada.

And as I haue placed this first 1300. light horsemen of different weapons in the order before described, so would I in the very same sort and form reduce the second number of 1300. stradiots, archers, and Crosbrowsers on horseback vpon the left side and flanke of the dimilaunces, that are vpon the left flanke of the men at armes, which are in wing of the left side of the Rereward, which performed, I would then giue order that the third diuision and number of 1300. stradiots, archers, and Crosbrowsers on horseback, should be deuided into 2. diuisions or parts, that is into 650. in each diuision, and that the first 650. stradiots, archers and Crosbrowsers on horseback should in the like order as abovesaid bee reduced in their societies and troupes vpon the right flanke of the dimilaunces, that are reduced on the right flanke of the men at armes, that are in wing on the right side of the principall battle: And that the other diuision and number of 650. stradiots, archers, and Crosbrowsers on horseback should bee likewise reduced in their societies and troupes vpon the left flanke and side of the broad square of dimilaunces, that are on the left flanke of the men at armes, that doo arme the left side of the a Rerewardrereward.

And I would that all those 4. wings of light horsemen, stradiots, archers and Crosbrowsers on horseback should vpon any occasion of battle, great incountrie, or skirmish, behaue themselves in fight according to the instructions that are heereafter described and set downe, where amongst other matters I make speciall mention of those 3. different sorts of light horsemen.

How & where  
to arme the  
foresaid 4 squa-  
drons, with  
field peeces.

And now as I haue reduced and placed these 4. battles of footmen, and armed them and their weapons of vollee with many squares and troupes of horsemen of diuers different sorts of armors and weapons, so would I in this sort following, arme those 4. squadrons with certen field peeces, according to the ordinarie vie of this time for the  
greater

greater annoiance of the Enemie, and for the more sure guard of the battles. First, in case there were any little hill or high ground of aduantage of any conuenient neecessesse vnto the two formost battles, that might command the open fieldes and plaines where the Enemies battles should march and approach, then I would there place so many field peeces as should bee requisite for that ground of aduantage, with some trench or trenches by good numbers of laborers and pioners vppon the sudden cast, and those peeces well and stronglie guarded with conuenient numbers of piquers, halbardiers, and archers, and would place the rest of the field peeces, vpon the flanks of the battles in their most conuenient places, with their powder, bullets, and all other thinges that do appertaine to the vse of them for the annoiance of the Enemie. But in case there were no such grounds nor ground of aduantage as aforesaid where to plant such peeces of artillerie, then would I place 3. fawcons ranforced of 6. poundes the bullet, and one fawconet ranforced of 3. poundes the bullet, some 8. or 10. paces wide from the right corner of the vaungard, and aduanced further forward then y<sup>e</sup> frunt and Corner of that battle by the like number of paces with their gunners and all their aides and thinges appertaining vnto those peeces well guarded with conuenient numbers of halbardiers; And so likewise would place the like numbers of 3. fawcons and one fawconet in the like distances wide and aduanced further forward, then the left corner of the same battle, by the like number of paces, with their gonners and all their aides and other thinges appertaining vnto those peeces, well guarded also with conuenient numbers of halbardiers.

And as I haue now armed the frunt of the said vaungard with the number of field peeces before planted, so would I arme the frutes of the other 3. battles of Reregard, of maine battle, and of a Rereregardrereward before placed and described, each battle with the like numbers of field peeces planted in like distaunces from the



frunt and corners of them, well guarded also with Halbardiers as aforesaid. And although the backs and Rere-gards of all those 4 battles should not need to bee armed with any fildie peeces, as it shall bee within fewe lines heereafter apparant by the rest which I will set downe concerning those matters: yet to arme those 4. battles in the greatest perfection that I can, I would place vpon euery corner of the backs and Rere-gards of all the aforesaid 4. battles, two sawcons and one sawconet in like distaunces of paces that I haue before placed the field peeces from the corners of the frunt of the aforesaid 4. battles.

Of what height  
the field peeces  
ought to bee.

But heere it is to bee noted that although diuers great Capitaines that haue bin commanders and leaders of armies, haue alwaies accounted Sakers of 10. or 12. pounds their bullets and other peeces from 10. poundes downwards to Robinets of one pound to bee in the number of fildie peeces, yet I to arme any battle with field peeces in the open fieldes, would vse no peeces aboue the heighth of sawcons of 6. pounds the bullets, and no smaller peeces then sawconets of 3. pounds the bullet, vnlesse it were some Robinets of one pound the bullet, and those mounted vpon carriages after the manner of Germanie light and easie to be drawne, and readie vpon the suddaine by the Gonners to bee turned euery waies. And the causes wherefore I would vse no peeces of any greater heighth for the field, are, that to vse Sakers of 10. or 12. pounds the bullets in the fildie, such peeces I say doo require more Horses, or Oxen to drawe them, and mento manage them, then Fawconets of 3. poundes, or Fawcons of 6. poundes doo, which ouerplus and greater numbers of Horses or Oxen of draught, doo vpon the remoouing of those horses or oxen, and drawing them backe when the peeces are planted, giue a great deale more impediment and trouble not onely to the Gonners and their aydes, but also to the fleeces, winges, and troupes of the weapons of Volee, that are reduced on the flankes  
and

and Corners of squadrons, then the small number of horses belonging to fawconets of three pounds or Fawcons of 6. pounds doo.

Also Armies sometimes in marching in the open and plaine fieldes, doo light vpon sandie and such other softish and yeelding groundes, where either vpon the drawing or discharging of Sakers of 10. or 12. poundes the bullets, their Wheelles doo sinke so deepe into the ground, that oftentimes they giue great impediment and let to the Gonners and their aides to mannage and vse them, vpon diuers needefull occasions; besides that, vpon their discharginges they worke no greater effect against the Enemy, then such Fawcons and fawconets as afore said doo.

Also it is further to be noted that I would neuer place aboute the number of 8. field peeces by the flanks or corners of any battle, nor vnder the number of 4. I meane that I woulde neuer place aboute 3. Fawcons and one Fawconet, and those in conuenient distances wide from the right Corner of the Battle, and 3. Fawcons and one Fawconet, wide and in like distaunces from the left frunt and corner of the same Battle, or at the fewest 2. Fawcons and one Fawconet, some 8. or 10. paces wide from the one Corner, and 2. Fawcons and one Fawconet wide in the like distaunce from the other Corner of the same Battle, and that in respect that too manie fild peeces beeing drawen and marching vpon the flanks of squadrons to the intent to bee planted as abouesaid vpon the day of battle, are for diuers causes and vpon diuers accidentes of farre greater impedimentes and trouble, then any waies profitable to their owne Squadrons.

Also it is further to bee noted that I woulde neuer place any Fielde peeces directlie before the frunt of anie Squadrons or Battailles, vnlesse I thought our forces in the field to bee much inferiour in strength to the Enemy,

because that peeces so planted would be a great impediment vnto the battles marching forward to incounter with the enemy, by reason that such squadrons should be compelled by such peeces so planted to open & break their ranks, and to disorder themselves, which is a matter of great danger the Enemy being in sight or neere at hand. And now hauing armed all the aforesaid 4: battles with field peeces in their most fitte and conuenient places, there resteth to shew what should become of the Cariages and baggages of the Campe, as also where the ouerplus of the horsemen and footmen that are not yet placed, ought to be employed.

The Carriages of all Armies and Camps do consist of two sorts, the one sorte that are publique, as of treasure and pay for the Armie, of great quantitie of powder both for great and small shot, of armor and weapon, of Artillerie, as of Cannons, Culuerings, demy Cannons, demy Culuerings, & Sakers and other smaller peeces, with all things belonging vnto them, of diuers sorts of victuall of prouision, of peeces maniable also, as of Curriers of warre, of mosquets, harquebuzes and other such peeces, with all things belonging vnto them, of bowes & sheafes of arrowes, and Crosbowes, gaffes, and quarrells, with piques, halbardes, targets, Launces, Launcezagaies and all other sorts of armors and weapons both offensiu and defensiu, with boates also to make bridges ouer riuers & all thinges appertaining vnto them: And to be brieve, of many other munitions & prouisions, al which being publique for the vse of the whole Armie or Campe, are vnder the charge of the Maister of the Ordinaunce. And as for the other Carriages and baggages that are priuate they are such as do belong vnto Cheistaines, Coronells, Captaines, and other higher and lower men of charge and officers, and to be short to all the soldiors of the Army that haue any thing to be caried: All which priuate Cariages also, are vnder the Maister of the Ordinance his commaundement and Order. Now all the aforesaid most important



portant publique Carriages that do belong to the Army and Campe, I would that the Maister of the Ordinaunce and his officers and substitutes should reduce as neere as he can possible into a square with such cōuenient distances betwixt euerie rowe of carriages & carriages as they might not be any impedimēt nor let the one to the other, neither in marching nor in staing and pawsing. And I would that the treasure should be caried either vpon mules or horses, or rather vpon close couered waggons after the manner of Germanie, and those carriages placed towards the midst of the square on the right hande, and that the waggons or Carts that do carrie the cheife substance of the powder, should be placed also towards the midst of the square on the left hand, and that both those sorts of carriages should bee very strongly guarded with good numbers of halbardiers, and that all the great ordinance of batterie and artillery with powder and bullets, and all other things belonging vnto them should be placed and drawn with their horses or oxen aswell vpon the frunt and backe, as vpon the outer flankes and sides of the same square: And I would that all the rest of the carriages should be reduced into 2. 3. or 4. ranks in the forme of a Rainebow, a semicircle or halfe round at the back of the most important publique cariages which are before reduced into square, in such sort as that the midst of the halfe round should be directly behind and verie neere the foresaid square of Cariages, and that both the endes of the semicircle should be so farre extended and drawn into a great Compasse circular, that the right ende thereof should haue right ouer against the left flanke & corner of the same (but a good distance wide) the hinder part of the right flanke of the principall battle, and that the leste end of the same halfe round, should also haue right ouer against the right flanke and corner (but a good distance wide) the hinder part of the left flank of the a Rereward, and that in such sort as that semicircle or halfe round of Cariages might seeme as it were to halfe compasse

How the Carriages and baggages of the Armie, should bee placed and guarded.

passe and embrace the backs and Rerewards of all the 4. battles and their weapons of volce: which Reducement of Cariages being performed, I would then take the 500. halbardiers, and the 900. piquers, which at the first forming of the 4. battles were reserued and not any where placed, and would also either from the beginning reserue vnplaced, or at least would drawe .400. archers .400. harquebuziers, and .400. mosquetiers, out of the 7000. archers, and the .3000. harquebuziers and mosquetiers, which are reduced and placed in many sleeues, wings, troupes and other formes vpon the flankes Corners and Reregards of all the aforesaid 4. battles, and would deuide all the aforesaid 900. piquers 500. halbadiers and 12000. wepons of volce of different sorts into 4. parts, 3. parts of the which being reduced into diuers squares and troupes, I would should be reduced vpon the backe and both the Corners of the semicircle, with certen sawconetts and Robynets for the guard of the backe and ends of the semicircle of Cariages, and therewithall would also place many of the harquebuziers and mosquetiers aforesaid vpon diuers of the Carriages themselves, that from thence vpon any approach of the Enemy, they might discharge their peeeces at them to their terror and mischiefe.

Now as for the fourth part and diuision of the weapons aforesaid I would they should be placed in many heafes and troupes vpon the frunts and flankes of the aforesaid square of carriages, as also vpon the ynnner parts and corners of the halfe round. And as for the 140. stradiots, archers on horsebacke and Crosbowers on horsebacke, I would that .100. of them should be placed vnder their Conductors in diuers little troupes & societies vpon the backe and Rereward of the halfe round, for the more sure garde of the same, and the rest which are 40. light hor-men, I would that they being deuided in their litle troupes and societies, should be for the garde of the inner parte of the semicircle, or else that the Enemies Army being in frunt of the aforesaid 4. battles, that 20. of those light horse-

horfmen vnder a fufficient Conductor fhould ferue for difcouerers on the right hand of the whole Armie, and that the other 20. light horfmen vnder the like Conductor fhould difcouer on the left hand, whether there were any vnlooked for troupes of the enemie approching, and thereof to giue aduertifement to the Generall of the Armie, or to the Lord Marfhall.

And now all thefe reducements before fet downe being performed, It is to be noted that for fo puiffant an Armie as this of 28000. horfmen and footmen of our Englifh Nation is, there cannot be fewer then 4000. pioners and labourers, befides the waggoners, Carters, and other baggagers of the Campe, aswel for the leuelling & plaining of groundes where the Armie and artillerie fhall paffe, as alfo for the fortifying of Campes and approching of places fortified with trenches, Croffe trenches and gabions, and for the making of mounts and working in mines, and infinite other thinges appertaining to the Armie and Campe: which 4000. labourers and pioners I would vpon the day of battle appoint and place in this fort following. Firft, I would that befides their fpades, How to reduce  
appoint and  
place the Pio-  
ners of the  
whole Armie;  
fhouelles, and mattocks, which they fhould haue alwaies by them readie to performe any labour or worke to them appointed by their Captaines and Conductors, that euerie one of them fhould haue a good halbard or blacke bill with a good dagger either hanging before them, or vpon their Girdles at their backs: And fo I would likewife that all the Waggoners, Carters and other baggagers of the Campe fhould bee appointed with the like weapons alwaies vpon their cariages readie vpon any occafion for them to take and vfe, or elfe that euery fort of them fhould haue fuch other weapons as they haue moft skill to handle: And of the pioners and labourers I would appoint fome conuenient numbers to bee with the field peeces that were placed vpon the fruntes and corners of all the 4. battles to helpe to remoue, turne and mannage them.



Also I would take 1600. more of those pioners and labourers, and would deuide them into 4. diuisions or parts of 400. in euery diuision, vnder their Captaines, & Leaders, and would appoint euery one of those 4. partes deuided into their societies of tens to attend vpon the aforesaid 4. battles, and that they should be placed at the backs and in Rereward of the societies of halbardiers that are in Rereward of the weapons of vlee of the 4. battles, readie to cut any trenches, or to perform any other commandment vnto them giuen, as also vpon the ouerthrow of the Enemie with their blaëke Bils or other weapons to follow the Chase, and doo execution vpon the Enemie flying as the souldiors halbardiers placed at the backs of the weapons of vlee ought to doo, because that according to right discipline vpon the ouerthrow of the Enemie, it is not any waies lawfull for battles and squadrons of footmen to breake their rankes and orders, to the intent to follow the Chase: And as for all the rest of the 4000. labourers and pioners, I would place them deuided vnder their Captaines and leaders aswel for the gard of the aforesaid square and halfe round of cariages, as for the keeping of the Cariages in order, and repairing and mending of the wheelles and other thinges of the Ordinance, or of Carts and waggons broken.

Squadrons and battles, vpon y ouerthrow of the enemie, are in no wise to breake their rankes and order to follow the chace: and that in respect of the many & great inconueniences that vpon diuers occasions and accidents, doe often happen,

And now hauing reduced and placed all the aforesaid 4. battles with their forlorn hopes, sleeues, wings, troups and other formes of weapons of vlee in their most conuenient places, and therewithall armed them with conuenient numbers of field peeces, and reduced and placed all the horsmen of diuers different sortes of armors and weapons in their most conuenient formes for the annoiance of the Enemie and for the aiding and succouring the one of the other vppon all needefull occasions and accidents, and therewithall placed all the Cariages of the Armie and Campe in the forme of a halfe round and semicircle with a square of cariages in the midst or bosome thereof for the guard of the Rerewards and backs of all the

the 4. battles; and all those cariages in their forms guarded with diuers different sorts of weapons both of horsemen and footmen, accompanied with small field peeces to make head against and resist al attempts either of horsemen or footmen: And all this to the intent presently vpon the approach of the Enemy that is now in sight to giue battle: Then I would wish according to the auncient vse of many Warlike Nations, to the intent that it might please Almighty God to prosper this Armie with victorie, that vpon the sound of the Lord Lieutenants trumpet for the displaieng of the standard Royall of the Army, to the intent to giue battle, the Enemy being in sight and approaching, all the souldiors should be instructed and taught long before to say this short praier following, or some other to the like effect.

**O** Almighty, Eternall, and incomprehensible God, we most humbly beseech thy diuine Maiestie, to giue vnto vs all courage, force and victorie to the glorie of thy holy Name.

*A short prayer to be saide by souldiors, vpon the approaching and, sight of the Enemies battle.*

And this said praier, I would wish to be said vpon the sight of the Enemies battles by all the squadrons of armed footmen, and by all the fleeces and wings of the souldiors of weapons of vleece vpon their knees in their Rankes as they stand. And that all the horsemen of euery sort of weapon should on horseback vse the same or the like short praier.

And therewithall I thought good further to aduertise, that those squadrons being so formed or in any other sort, to the intent to giue battle to the Enemy, all the souldiors piquers, and halbardiers should be instructed and taught long before, that it is not lawfull nor sufferable for any of the souldiors of any ranke reduced into forme of battle, when vpon the very neere approach of the enemies squadron they haue vprighted their piques, to the intent with the points of them to charge or receiue a charge of their Enemies be they either horsemen or footmen, so much as once to turne their faces to looke behind them: And

*It is not lawfull nor sufferable for any souldior vpon the neere approach of the Enemy, to turne his face.*

to the intent that they may bee the more terrified from any waies turning their faces to look backe (which doth argue feare) they are to be instructed according to discipline, that it shall bee lawfull for the souldiors of euerie Ranke to wound or kill any souldior or souldiors of the ranke before them vppon the turning of their faces and bodies to looke backe: and the same is to bee performed euen from the verie first to the last rankes: And this instruction is to be obserued to y intent to make all the souldiors of a squadron formed to keepe their weapons, faces, eies, and braue countinaunces towards their Enemies, without shewing any suspicion or so much as one tittle of feare.

But now after my describing verie particularlie and at large this said Armie reduced into the forme & formes aforesaid, to the intent that thereby all Gentlemen affected to matters of armes, and souldiors may with great facilitie vnderstand mine intention and meaning; it may bee that some gentlemen not experienced in matters of armes, will in reading this my proiect imagine that the reducement and forming of an armie into diuers battles and other formes, dooth appertaine onely to the Lorde Lieutenant Generall, or to the Lord high Marshall of the armie; and that the same should be performed onley by one of them, one peece after another: And that they peradventure may imagine the rather; because I in my foresaid reducing and forming of y armie by way of discourse doe write, and say, that first I would reduce and place the vaungard, then the Reregard, and then the other two battles, and the Weapons of vlee, and after the horsemen of diuers sorts of armors and Weapons in this sort, and in that sort, with many other particularities and circumstances: Vnto which their misimaginationes I say, that it is not one mans worke; although it were *Iulius Caesar* himselfe, to reduce a whole armie into diuers forms of battle with celeritie when they are to march in the enemies Countrey, or to fight with the Enemy, but that the  
same



same must be of necessitie perfourmed by diuers Chieftains, and higher and lower officers of the armie: And yet that notwithstanding, it is not possible to perfourme the same with art, celeritie, and Discipline, vnlesse the direction and order thereof doo proceede either from the onely mouth of the Chieftaine of the armie, or from the Lorde high Marshall, or some other chiefe Officer by them appointed; And therefore it dooth behooue (which of them soeuer dooth giue the order) to haue the forme and formes, of all the battles, squares and troupes, as well of horsemen as of footemen with the scituation and nature of the ground and groundes, and many other particularities in his memorie and head; and that in so great perfection, as if hee with his eies did at that instant behold and see the whole armie in the field reduced into all his intended formes.

And therefore to perfourme the same, it is the ordinarie vse of all skilfull Chieftaines of armies and Lorde Marshals when they haue concluded and resolved with themselves by the aduise of their Councell, into what forme and formes the whole armie shall bee reduced to march or to fight, to call and assemble before them the Chieftaines of all the horsemen and footmen, the maister of the Ordinance, the Sergeant Maior generall, the maister of the Campe, and such other men of office and charge as hee thinketh requisite, and there giueth order vnto them from point to point, concerning y dislodging and ordering of al those most important affaires: which being by him performed; they presently do resort euerie one to their owne charges, and doo giue order to their Lieutenants, to their Sergeant Maiors, Captaines, and all other officers vnto whom the execution of those affaires and actions doo appertain, for the performance of al those reducements and orders that they haue receiued of the Chieftaine of the armie, or from the Lord Marshall: which doone, then all the Captaines both of

The ordinarie proceedinge of al skilful Chieftaines of Armies in their reducements and forming of battles.

M.3. horse.

horsesmen and footmen, and all their officers, doo with all celeritie reduce their bandes into order, and march into the field, where the Lord Lieutenant Generall, with the Lord Marshall, and Sergeant Maior generall, do ouersee and direct the Coronels, Sergeant Maiors and Captains, in the ordering and forming of their battles, troupes and other formes. And thus by this ordinarie proceeding of all skilfull Chieftaines of Armies in their reducementes and formings of battles and Campes, those and all other matters militarie of any great importance, are with great facility, and in very short time performed.

And now hauing shewed all the most couuenient waies of reducing and forming of all sortes of squadrons aswell great as small, and where in the field to their most aduantage they may be placed, and therewithal how and where horsesmen of diuers different sortes of armors and weapons ought to bee placed in their most couuenient places: with many other particularities, I think good before I goe any further to giue an aduertisement that although it hath beene the vse of all antiquitie amongst many Nations according to good discipline to reduce the chiefe force of their armed footmen into three squadrons or battles, terming the first, vaunguard, the second, battle, and the third, Rereguard; and that oftentimes they haue vsed to forme very great battles of 8000. or 10000. or more into one body of squadron; yet I for diuers causes and reasons would wish a Lieutenant generall, or lord Marshall of a puissant Armie, rather to forme 6. 7. or 8. smaller battles; incase the number of the Armie bee so great that the same by reason militarie may bee performed, then onely into three great battles as aforesaid.

As for example, if there were an Army of 30000. horsesmen and footmen; and that there were of those. 15000. armed men piquers and short weapons to be reduced into diuers battles; that I would not only of those. 15000. according to the ordinary vse, forme a vauntgard, battle and Rereward, but also 3. other smaller battels, vnto the  
which

Certen reasons  
alleged to  
proue that it is  
more conueni-  
ent and of grea-  
ter force, for  
the generall of  
a puissant Ar-  
mie that doth  
consist of many  
thousands of  
armed footmen  
to reduce them  
into 5, 6, 7. or 8.  
battles, than  
onely into 3.  
great battles  
of vaungard,  
battle, & rere-  
gard, accor-  
ding to the  
common vse.

which I would giue 3. different names, & would call the first by the name of a vauntregard Rereward; the second the batle of succor; and the third by the name of a Rereregard Reregard; and the firste 3. battles of vaungard, battle, and Reregard I would should consist of 3000. piquers and short weapons to euery battle; and that each one of those battles being reduced into squadron should consist of .75. piquers in frunt, and .40. by flankes, ouerplus of broken rankes not so much as one soldior; and the last 3. mentioned battles I would should consist of .2000. to euery battle, and that euery one of them being reduced in to squadrons should consist in frunt, that is in euery ranke from frunt to backe of 50. piquers, and by flankes of .40. rankes, ouerplus of broken rankes not any one soldior. And these 6. foresaid battles reduced into the formes aforesaid, and flankt and wing'd with weapons of volec of diuers sorts according to discipline and the comming of the enemy; in mine opinion should be of great aduantage to encounter with 15000. armed men their enemies reduced but only into .3. batles of 5000. to euery battle; by reason that whilst the 3. formost battles each of them consisting of 3000. as aforesaid, do confrunt with the .3. great batles of 5000. in each battle, the other 3. battles of a vauntregard Rereward and of the battle of succor, and of a Rereregard Rereward, that doo march in winges in Rereward retired, as aforesaid, may with great celeritie and dexteritie by marching and auaucing themselves forward, charge the flankes of their enemies 3. battles, and put them in great hazard of disordering & breaking: Howbeit here it may be obiected against mine opinion, that in case the 3. great battles of the enemy of .5000. to euery battle were each one of them reduced into .125. armed men in frunt, & of 40. rankes by flankes; that their in encounting & ioining with the formost 3. small batles of vaungard, battle, and Reregard, they might euerie one of them in ioyning frunt to frunt with them, in respect that euery one of the great battles of .5000. to euery battle

It is here to be noted that the whole frunt of 15000. men reduced into 3. great battles of 5000. to each battle doth consist of 3. times 125. armed men, which being nombred as if they were all in one frunt, doe make iust 375. piquers, & by flanke 40. rankes, ouerplus of broken rankes, not any one soldior. And so likewise the frunts of the 15000. men reduced into 6. smaller battles, 3. of the which being of 3000. to each battle doe consist euery one of them of 75. piquers in frunt. And the frunt also of each one of the other 3. smallest squadrons of 2000. to euery battle consisting of 50. piquers in each frunt being all 6. frunts nombred together as if they were all in



one frunt, doe  
likewise make  
the iust nom-  
ber of 375. pi-  
quers in frunt,  
as the 3. great  
squadrons of  
3000. to euery  
batle doe, and  
by flanke 40.  
ranks, ouerplus  
not any one  
soldior.

batle doth beare a greater bredth by the nūber of .28. sol-  
diors in frunt, then any of the formost 3. squadrons of 3000  
in euery squadron do, with great aduantage draw vp a  
sleeue of 28. in euery ranke, and of 40. ranks by flanks;  
and finding themselves full against the flanke of their E-  
nemies squadron, they may suddenly make of flanke frunt  
by turning their faces and weapons towards the flanke  
of the foresaid little squadrons, and then reforming them-  
selves in their distances, and closing themselves in frunt  
and flanks, may bend their piques and charge the flanks  
of the little squadrons to their most assured ruine. Or o-  
therwise vpon the inconsiderate ioining of any one of the  
small squadrons of 3000. being in frunt but .75. with the  
verie midit of the frunt of the great battles of .5000. that  
do consist of 125. piquers in frunt; the foresaid great squa-  
drons vpon such an aduantage offered, may drawe vp  
each of them two sleeves from each side or flanke of their  
squadron one of .14. piquers in euery ranke, and finding  
themselves euen vpon both the flanks of the little squa-  
dron; they may of their flanks make frunt, and so of .14.  
that they were before in euery ranke, they are now by  
making of flanke frunt become to be 40. in euery ranke,  
and in length by flanks 14. soldiors, and so by reforming  
their distances and straightning and closing themselves  
in frunt and by flanks as aforesaid, may with their piques  
charge both the flanks of the little squadron to their vt-  
ter disorder and ouerthrow. To which obiection I say,  
that those foresaid aduantages and others might be very  
well taken against the 3. little squadrons of vaungard, bat-  
tle, and Rereward, if it were not that the other 3. little bat-  
tles of succor of 2000. to euery squadron, euery of them  
of .50. piquers in frunt, marchig in Rereward in distincte  
battles by them selues were not alwaies ready vpon the  
drawing vp of all such sleeves or winges from the bodies  
of the great squadrons, suddenly with great dexteritie to  
charge them either in frunt flanks or backe, to their most  
assured ruine and ouerthrow. But againe it may be  
further

further alledged in fauor of the great battles, that al squadrons of armed men piquers doo alwaies march, wing'd, & flankt with conuenient numbers of weapons of volec, in such sort as those weapons of volec should be a great impediment to the forsaide little squadrons to charge the fleeces, and wings as aforesaid.

Vnto the which I say, that true it is, that all well ordered battles, are wing'd and flankt with shot of diuers sorts and that it hath beene and is a maxime amongst al men of warre of great experience and Iudgement, that heares, fleeces, wings and troupes of shot beeing deuided into many small diuisions, are a great deale more apt and ready to bee employed at one time, into more different and effectuell seruices to worke great effectes then any great diuisions of shot can bee: Which if it be so, as most certen it is by all experience Militarie; then the 3. battles of 5000. to euery battle hauing 10000. weapons of volec of diuers sortes to be reduced vnder their safeguard, must diuide those 10000. into so many compertimentes and diuisions of fleeces, wings and troupes, as are requisite to guard 3. such battles; As also the diuisions of weapons of volec themselues to bee protected and defended vnder the safeguard of those 3. squadrons; and so likewise the 15000. armed men beeing reduced into 6. little battles as aforesaid, hauing the like number of weapons of volec of diuers sorts to aide them, and to be by them protected, must by all order militarie diuide those 10000. weapons of volec into double as many or more diuisions of fleeces, wings and troupes then the 3. great battles haue diuided theirs for their aide. From all which experienced reasons and examples I come to conclude that as 15000. armed footemen reduced but onely into 3. great battles cannot by any reason militarie haue so manie fleeces, winge, troupes, & other diuisions of diuers sorts of shot vnder their safegard, as 15000. armed men reduced into 6. smaller battles may haue: Euen so that the 3. great squadrons of armed men with their few & great diuisions of shot cannot possibly by any reason or experience

worke so great effects, as the 6. smaller battles their Enemies, with their many and more conuenient diuisions of diuers sorts of weapons of vlee may worke.

And now whereas I haue before foured a squadron and diuers squadrons all of halbardiers or battleaxes enuironed or empaled about with 5. rankes of piquers in frunt, flankes and backe; and that the short weapons are in greater number then y piques; & therefore by some in these daies (that doo more regard the new fashions, and fancies of the disordered and corrupted *Militia*, that of very late yeares in diuers ciuill warres haue crept into Christendome, then the true discipline, art, and science militarie, which hath beene practised and vsed from age to age of all antiquitie, in the warres betwixt Emperors, Kinges, and puissant Common wealthes) it may peraduenture be thought, that such a squadron is no waies comparable for all great effects and purposes to a squadron of the like number al of piquers without any short weapons, sauing onely a very fewe for the guard of the Ensignes: Thervnto I say, that I doo thinke this squadron of short weapons enuironed with 5. rankes of piques as aforesaid, to be of a great deale more aduantage, strength and effect aswell against horsmen as footmen, then any squadron of the like number all of piquers can be. And because it shall be apparant that I am not carried with new fashions and fancies, but with the obseruation of that which I haue read, hath been in vse and obserued by diuers braue Nations in many ages, as also by mine owne hearing the opinions of diuers great Captaines, Coronels, and Sergeants Maiors of diuers warrelike Nations, some of late yeares dead, and some yet aliue; And therewithall by that which I haue seene and obserued my selfe, in the squadrons of diuers Nations, some of the which haue vsed squadrons all of piquers as aforesaid, and other Nations squadrons of piquers with some rankes of halbards with in their piques: which different vses of Nations haue giuen me occasion not onely to enter into imagination of  
the



the different or contrarie causes of the forming of such squadrons, but also the more curiouse to aske & inquire of diuers men of great sufficiencie of those Nations, the different reasons and causes of the forming of such squadrons, some all of piques and others of piques and short weapons as aforesaid; I therefore will set down that which I haue gathered and obserued by the diuersitie of their opinions concerning the same, as also by mine own sight and consideration, and will here by the helpe of Almighty God, giue sufficient causes and reasons to proue that my foresaid Squadron formed with short weapons, enuironed about with 5. rankes of piquers as aforesaid, is of farre greater force and effect, then if the Squadron were all of piquers; And the reasons are these.

First, when a Squadron of men at armes or dimilaunces, or diuers squadrons seconding one another, shoulde charge the Squadron of footemen all of piquers in frunt: all men of consideration may consider and know that all the whole Squadron consisting only of piquers, according as I haue before formed diuers squadrons in this discourse; that not aboue 5. rankes of the foremost piques at the most beeing closed in frunt, flankes and backe, or rather but 4. rankes, can make head with the pointes of their piques to hurt or reach the horses or men of the formost ranks of the Launces charging; & that because the longest piques that are in these daies vsed by any Nation are not aboue 18. foot long, of which length of 18. foot, the formost ranke of piquers either clapping the butendes of their piques vnder their right feete, or carrying them breast high to resist, and repulse the Launces (both which waies are in the beginning of this booke, very particularlie declared) I say that from their right handes that they hold the butendes of their piques withall to their left and forehands that doo beare their piques (incase they carry them abouehand breast high) doo occupie and therefore shorten 3. foot at least of the length of their piques towards the foremost ranke

Reasons to  
prooue a Squa-  
dron of Battle-  
axes, enuiro-  
ned about with  
5. rankes of Pi-  
ques to be a far  
greater aduan-  
tage, strength,  
and effect as  
gainst horseme  
or footmen the  
any Squadron  
of the like nom-  
ber, all of Pi-  
ques.  
Not aboue 5.  
rankes of Pi-  
quers closed in  
frunt, flanke &  
backe, are able  
to make heade  
with their Pi-  
ques, to reache  
or hitte the first  
ranke of Laun-  
ces charging,  
for diuers rea-  
sons.

of their Enemies; then there doo remaine 15. foot beyond their left and forehandes more for them to reach and annoy their enemies withall; then the second ranke closing themselves to y first ranke and carying their piques breast high over the shoulders of the first ranke do leese 3. foot more of y length of their piques by that which they hold betwixt their hinder and forehands, as aforesaid; so as there remaineth but 12. foot of the length of their piques beyond the foremost rankes towards the annoiance of their Enemies; then the third ranke closing themselves to the shoulders of the second ranke doo come likewise to loose three foote more by so much of their piques as they hold betwixt both their handes as aforesaid, which with the thickeffe and distance of the two rankes before them dooth come to make them to leese 9. foote of the length of their piques, so as there remaineth only 9. foot of the length of their piques at the most beyond the foremost ranke towards the annoiance of the Enemie; then the fourth ranke by the like cause and reason commeth to leese 3. foot more of the length of their piques, so as there remaineth only 6. foot of the length of their piques with the pointes of them before the foremost ranke to annoy the Enemie; then the fifth ranke of the Squadron of piquers commeth by the like causes and reasons as aforesaide to leese 3. foote more at the least of the length of their piques, which with the thickeffe of all the 4. rankes before them doo come to make them to leese 15. foot or more of the length of their piques so as there remaineth only 3. foot of y length of their piques beyond y foremost and first ranke, the which 3. foot of their piques towards the Enemie reaching too short to annoy either horses or men, doo rather through the shortnesse of the same, reaching so little a waie beyond the first ranke, trouble the foremost rankes of their fellowes, then worke any other good effect; and therefore those piques of the fifth ranke are rather to be kept still vprighted with the points something bent towards the Enemie, then any waies to bee couched

couched as the piques of the 4. foremost rankes are, and so likewise the piquers of the sixth, seuenth, and eighth rankes, and subsequently of all the rest hauing no possibilitie at the first charge either of horsemen, or footmen, to annoy them, they are to keepe their piques still vprighted, the pointes something bent forward towards the enemy to shew themselves in the sight of the enemy ready to succour the formost rankes, rather then any waies to beare the pointes of their piques any lower. But if any man will say that all the backer rankes of piquers may orderlie and easilie succour and supplie the places of such piquers of the fore rankes as come to be slaine, wounded, or ouerthrowne, and so resist or repulse either horsemen or footmen entring, as I my selfe in the beginning of this booke haue particularly set downe.

Therevnto I answere, that the piques that are in the backer rankes vppon the accidentall breaking in of any men at Armes into the foremost ranks of piquers; or vpon the entring of any of the formost ranks of the contrarie squadron of footmen; are through the hauing of so many other ranks of piquers before them, with the great length of those weapons in a presse so vnmaniable, and therefore of so little effect when battles come to ioine; that most of the piques of the inner rankes; I meane of the sixt, seuenth, and eighth, and so consequentlie of the rest of the middle rankes, through the letting fall of the pointes of their piques forward (how leisurly soeuer) to couch and bend the points of them to the annoiance of the enemies, do through their great length so intermingle, and intricate with the piques of the former rankes, that euery sudden touch of the piques that are in the ranks before one another, do so disorder, beat, and turne aside the points of the piques from their intended thrusts at their enemies, as that they rather turne them through their great length to the trouble of the ranks before them, then any waies to resist, repulse, or annoie the Enemy.

An Obiection  
answered.

But now it may be demanded of me wherfore the sixt,  
N. 3.                      seuenth,



Why the sixth, seventh, and so consequentlie, the rest of the inner ranks can not as orderly let fall & couch their Piques to the mischiefe of the Enemies, as the 5. foremost ranks.

seuenth, and so consequentlie the rest of the inner ranks should not as orderlie one after another let fall and couch their piques to the resistance and mischiefe of their enemies, as the 5. formost, and first ranks of piquers may. Wherevnto I answer that the 4. or 5. first ranks hauing apparant and cleare in their eies and sights the comming of their Enemies in Squadron, be they horsemen or footmen, may with greater order and leisure all one after another couch their piques and charge a contrary Squadron of footmen, or receiue a charge of horsemen, then the other inner ranks of piquers can, who vpon the breaking in and entring of some of the men at armes in one place or other, or y entring of some part of the Squadron of their enemies footmen more in one place then in another, as sometimes it happeneth, cannot so well and clearely see the comming and entring of their Enemies, by reason of so many ranks of their fellowes before them, as that they may so wel in iust and conuenient times, moments and distances, orderlie and effectually let fall and couch their piques as the 4. or 5. foremost ranks haue doone.

Vpon which accidentes it dooth ordinarilie happen, that such inner ranks are driuen to let fall and couch their piques vpon suddens, least yby their not couching them, they should by their enemies approching them too neer leese the vse of the points of their piques. Which sudden letting fall and couching of their piques, dooth cause the aforelaid intermingling and intricating, and confused ouerthwarting of piques with piques, a great deale more in the inner ranks, then any waies in the formost 4. or 5. ranks as aforelaid. By all which it is to bee considered and noted, that neither horsemen, Launces, nor footmen piquers can enter vnder the points of my Squadron of battleaxes empaled and inuironed in frunt, flanks and back, with 5. ranks of piques as aforelaid, but that they must of necessitie abide the first violence of the pointes of them, because they find them already in great order and leisure  
couched

couched to resist and repulse them.

Whereas farre otherwise it doth behooue the inner ranks of a Squadron consisting all of piquers, to obserue the entering of their Enemies be they horsemen or footmen in such moments & iust distances, as that they may be sure to let fall and couch their piques, when their Enemies are entred, and do come within 4. or 5. ranks of them; which if they should faile to performe; then it were too late for such inner rankes to couch their piques either againste horsemen or footmen, now entred and comne within and vnder the length of their piques. But vnto this, some vn-skilfull soldiour may obiect and say, that the inner rankes may still carrie their piques couched, readie to resist, or repulse their Enemies entering. Or otherwise, that they letting fall and couching their piques, after that their Enemies be entered within lesse then 5. or 4. rankes of them may so farre retire, and pull them backe, as that they may recouer the vse of the points of them against their Enemies to their great annoiance.

Vnto which obiections, I say that it is not in the force and strength of the most puissant soldiours of any Nation that liue, still to carrie their piques couched, no nor yet to beare them abouehand ouer their fellowes heades but a verie little while, considering the great length and heaueth of them: And therefore they must neuer let fall and couch them, vntill such instant & needfull times, as their Enemies do approach them in so neare distances, as they must presently (either with one entire thrust, if they bee the formost, 4 or .5. rankes, or with diuers thrusts in iust instantes and times if they be the inner rankes), vpon the entering of the Enemy, be driuen to make head, and succor the rankes before them; for if the inner rankes should through lacke of skill thrust at their Euemies before they come within the reach of their piques, then they should worke no other effect, but thrust their owne fellowes that are betwixt them and their Enemies, to their trouble, or mischiefe in their heads, necks or backs. And for answer

An obiection  
answered.

to the other obiection that the ynnier rankes of piquers letting fall and couching their piques, may pul and retire them so farre backe, as that they may againe recover the vse of the points of them against their Enemies entered; I say, that if the enemies be they either horsemen or footmen be entered but only .7. 6. 5. 4. or 3. feete within and vnder the length of any of the piques of the inner ranks that it is not possible for such piquers, in respect of the ranke and rankes that are so neare and close behind them, to pull their piques with their armes so farre backe, as any waies to recouer y vse of the pyonts of them against such Enemies as are comne within and vnder their piques as aforesaid: whereof insueth that those inner rankes haue vterly lost the vse of their piques, and therefore must let them fall to the great trouble of the leggs and feete of the rankes of their fellows aduauncing forward, and betake themselues to their swords and daggars, which are not weapons any waies able to repulse or resist armed men with battleaxes, or halbards. By all which before alleged, I thinke it is most apparant that the 5. rankes of piquers that do empale & environ my Squadron of battleaxes by frunt, flanks, and backe, are ranks enough to resist any Charge or Charges of Launces, aswell, and a great deale better, then if the same Squadron were all of piques, because that the 4. or 5. first rankes only are those that do worke al the effects to the resisting & repulsing of Launces charging, or that are with their thruth to resist and repulse any charge of a Squadron of footmen piquers their Enemies; and if any Launces by chaunce should breake through those 5. rankes, then the battleaxes, and short staued, and long edged, and short and strong pointed halbards in the handes of well armed men, are readie at the heeles of the 5. rankes of their piquers, and do wonderfully both with blow and thrust at the heads, and faces of horses or men, kill wound, ouerthrow, or repulse either horsemen Launces, or footmen piquers, whose first charges and furies haue bene before greatly staied and weakened

The great effect that a Squadron of Battleaxes, environed about with 5. rankes of Piquers do work.



ned by y<sup>e</sup> resistance of the first 5. ranks of piquers (as aforesaid;) For it is to all men of vnderstanding in matters Militarie most euident, that short staued battleaxes, or halbards, of not about 6. foot long in their whole length, do no waies in their blowes nor thrusts, either against horsemen or footmen trouble, entermingle, nor intricate one with another. by reason of their shortnesse, as the ranks of piques do, through their great lengthes: which piques doo no waies kill nor hurt but only with their pointes, as is before at large declared. By all which I come to conclude, that 4. or 5. of the first ranks, be it in frunt, flanks, or backe; I meane which of them soeuer vpon the coming of the enemy be made frunt; doo worke far greater effectes then all the rest of the inner ranks of piquers can possibly do: for in troth, all y<sup>e</sup> inner ranks of piquers besides the 5. first ranks, doo neither against horsemen, and chieflie against footemen halbarders, or battleaxes well armed; no nor yet against armed men with swordes and targets, vsing their targets only to defend their faces from the points of the piques, worke any important effect, as it is most manifest by the reasons, causes and accidents by me before alledged.

And thus hauing at large shewed by diuers reasons the imperfections of squadrons that doo consist onelie of piques, with the great perfections and effects of squadrons of battleaxes enuironed onely with 5. ranks of piquers; as also howe all sortes of squadrons that are commonlie in vse in the open fieldes in these daies, and also in al former ages ought to be reduced into form, with many other different particularities; I will omit diuers other sorts & forms of little battles that are contained in som printed books of diuers languages; as of Crossebattles, of battles in triangle, & battles in form of stars, with many other such battles of diuers shapes & fashions extraordinary, y<sup>e</sup> are rather set forth to fill vp books & to please y<sup>e</sup> curious; then for any great vse of them; by reason y<sup>e</sup> such phantastical battles are no waies able in the open fields to

march & encounter with such squadrons as I haue before described and set down: And yet somtimes armies may march vpon such strange & extraordinary grounds (as in marching ouer mountains or high hills y haue varietie of forms of rising & descending grounds) y it is not possible to form such great squadrons in such forms, as I haue before declared and described, but that vpon the comming of the enemy they must bee forced to deuide their three battles of vauntguard, battle and Rereward, that they marched withall in the plaine and open fieldes, into as many varieties of little battles and formes, as the aduantages and formes of the varietie of groundes where they presently find themselves doo present vnto them; and therewithall to flank their armed men on euery side with weapons of vleece: All which a Lord Marshall or sergeant Maior may with a great deale more facilitie perform, then to forme such great squadrons as I haue before described, reduced, and formed.

But heere I thinke it good to aduertise the Reader, that I haue heard verie credible reported, that there is another kind of forming of a battle, amongst some of the Sergeants Maiors of our Nation in these daies greatly in vse, and that is; That they place foure piquers with their piques aduanced in square, according to the greatnesse of the squadron that they meane by guesse to form with the number of piquers that they haue for that purpose: And somtimes they place in the midst of the frunt betwixt the two formost piquers, a third piquer, and so likewise they place two other piquers, vpon the midst of each flanke one, betwixt the said piquers that are in flanke, with a fourth piquer also in the midst betwixt the two hindermost piquers, which 8. piquers when they haue placed in as iust square in their distaunces as they can: then they command al the piquers that they meane by guesse to reduce into squadron, beeing all behind and in Rereward of the 8. piquers in square, presentlie to run into the void place within the square of the 8. piquers, and there  
to

to fall into their ranks with hubbledeshuf as well as they can, vntill they haue filled vp all the distances and empty place within y square of the said 8: piquers, which being performed; they hold this way not only for a verie ready forming of a squadron, but also for a most excellent waie of reducement, because that there is not any Sergeant Maior so vnskilfull, although hee be vtterly ignorant in Arithmetique, nor that he do know so much as one letter vpon the book, but that he may by guesse forme such a squadron; which kind of forming, or rather deforming of squadrons, in troth is called of all antiquitie to make a squadron or battle of extremitie and necessity; when vpon the sudden and vnlooked for approach and neare coming of the enemy, through the fault and negligence of the scouts & discouersers, they are forced in the place of assemblie in their Campe, to make of necessity vertue: that is, for lacke of time to reduce their squadrons into forme of like numbers of souldiors in euery ranke, and into their iust and proportionate distances both by frunt & flanks according to discipline, to form a confused squadron of different numbers of soldiors into crooked ranks, and vncerten and confused distances, into the void ground or place that is within 4. 8. or 12. or more piquers, placed in square as abouesaid, in the place of assembly of their Campe: which kind of disordered battles of extremitie are no waies able by any reason Military, to encounter and abide the charge of a squadron of the like number of piquers reduced into forme according to discipline; that is of like numbers of soldiors in euerie ranke from frunt to backe, and in their euen and proportionate distances in frunt, and by flanks; and therefore being alwaies ready with great order and facilitie to incorporate and close themselues by frunt and flanks, may without any waies troubling the one the other, nor intricating their piques nor ranks, mannage and vse their piques with great dexteritie; and charge, and ouerthrow, such a confused multitude, or battle of extremitie that are in

Some Sergeants Mators of this time doe through lacke of vnderstanding and skill, thinke a battell of extremitie and necessity to be better then a battell according to art and discipline formed.



vnccerten numbers in their ranks, and in as vnccerten and confused distances: which causeth disequality and crookednesse of rankes; and therefore cannot possibly close themselves in frunt and by flankes, in any order, forme, and strength, nor mannage and vse their piques without confounding and intricating their piques with their fellowes piques, to the great aduantage of their enemies well formed Squadron, and their own most certen ruine; Besides all which it is not possible for such a disordered Squadron to march in the fields, with any order, nor according to discipline to performe diuers other effectes belonging to well ordered Squadrons in the fiede, as all skilful and expert Sergeants Maiors, and men of warre of experience and iudgement doo verie well know. VVherfore I come to conclude that such disordered battles of necessitie and extremitie are neuer to bee vsed, but vpon a suddaine and vnlooked for comming of the enemy, through the negligence of the scoutes, discoverers, or Centinelles as aforesaid. And therefore now I proceed to diuers other very important and requisit matters Militarie.

*That great bands of 500. vnder an Ensigne are more conuenient for al seruices in the field, then smal bands of 150.*

**I**N this place before I proceede any further, I thought good to notifie vnto all such as shall read these my instructions, that my opinion is, y great bands of footmen of 500. souldiours to euery Ensigne according to the ancient and moderne vse of Germany (when they doo inuade, or resist, and make head against y Turk) are more conuenient, and a great deale better as well for the princes sauing of many paies of Captaines, and officers, as also for the more speedie forming of great battles or Squadrons with dexteritie & celeritie, then smal bands of 150. are; who in respect of the many Captaines and officers, are a farre greater charge vnto the prince as aforesaid

Great bandes  
of footmen of  
500 to carrie  
Ensigne are a  
great deale bet  
ter then bands  
of 150. or 200.  
for diuers  
causes, and rea-  
sons.

foresaid; as also through the smalnesse and great number of their compertiments or diuisions of diuers different sorts of weapons, a great deale more slow and vnfit to be reduced into great battles or squadrons, then great bāds are: which mine opinion, because I haue fortified and proued the same with certen examples & many reasons in my booke of discourses, which I set forth and caused to be printed 1590. and yet that the same hath beene by certen apassionate Gentlemen with many malicious and vaine words void of all reason militarie, denied in certen malicious libelling pamphlets by them in written hande in many places dispersed contrary to all ciuilitie and profession militarie; I wil againe in this place rehearse & set downe a part of that which is contained in my foresaid booke of discourses, and wil fortessie the same with such reasons and examples, as any man that is of any discreti- on may manifestlie see the great ignorance and lacke of skill of those that doo thinke, that many small comperti- ments of piquers and of weapons of volec may be assoon brought into any forme of battle, with sleeues, wings, forlorne hopes, &c, as great bandes of 500. that do con- sist of great compertiments of different sorts of weapons may; And therefore the words of my booke of discour- ses to proue my foresaid proiect, are in a manner verba- tim, these following.

When the great Princes of Germanie vppon any oc- casion or iniury offred, are disposed to make Warre one against another, or vpon an imperiall army assembled to inuade or resist the Turk, beeing bounde as they are by their Tenures Militarie to the Empire, some to finde Horsemen, and others to finde footemen at their owne charges, they then vppon such occasions haue alwaies vsed, and doo still vse to forme their Regiments of foot- men into great bands of 500. to an Ensigne, & that they vse especiallie for two causes, the one thereby in their re- gimentes and so consequentlie in their whole Armies to saue the pay of a great sort of Captaines, Lieutenantes

The causes and reasons where- fore y<sup>e</sup> Princes of Germanie doe vse great bandes of 500. in their seruice of the Empire.

of bands, Ensignbearers and other officers, which would be greatly increased & so amount to a far greater charge, and pay, in case they should compose smaller bandes of 200. or 150. or vnder that number.

The other cause that doth moue them to forme their bands so great, is, that their *Militia* consisting of harquebuziers, mosquetiers, piquers, and some halbarders, with a few flathe swords for the guard of their Ensignes, that those sorts of weapons by reason of the greatnesse of the bands being in great compertiments and diuisions may be the more readilie and easilie drawne out, and seperated, and with a great deale more celeritie incorporated with the other great compertimentes of like weapons of other great bands to forme their squadrons with fleeces, winges, troupes, and forlorne hopes, according to the order and direction of their Coronels, and Sergeantes Maiors, then if their bands were smaller either of 200. or 150. or vnder that number, whereby the Compertiments of weapons should be also the smaller, and therby in number the greater, and so consequently, would require a much longer time not only to drawe out, but also to incorporate compertimentes with compertimentes for the forming of battles with fleeces, winges, and forlorne hopes as aforesaid: Besides that, such great bands both by reason and experience are as readie, and a great deale more ready to bee employed either in whole companies vnder their Captains and Lieutenants, or deuided into partes and corporalates vnder their Corporals and Sergeants, for watches, bodies of watches, Centinels, and all other ordinarie and extraordinary employments and actions militarie, in Campe, Towne, or field, then any smal bands are: For it is most euident that smal bands of 150. to an Ensigne, consisting of 5. different sortes of weapons, (viz:) piques, battleaxes, mosquers, harquebuzes, and longbowes, and that therefore euery one sort of those weapons is to be reduced into diuers little diuisions by themselves, which besides the vncomely sight to  
see



see so many small compertimentes in euery such little band, it would require a much longer time vpon the daile and ordinarie dislodging of an Armie reduced into a vaungard, battle and rereward, to draw so great numbers of compertiments out of such a number of little bandes; then out of a few bands of 500. to draw a few great compertiments, and to incorporate and reduce them into any forme or formes.

And this before written, I thinke, might suffice to perswade any that do professe Armes, that are of any discretion, although but of meane iudgement in matters Militarie, that such great bands as aforesaid, are a great deale more fitt and conuenient to forme battles and squadrons withall, then such small bands as aforesaid are. Howbeit because there be some 3. or 4. of our Nation y<sup>e</sup> haue written in certen lewde and false pamphlets and libells against me (as is before mentioned) that haue not bene ashamed to name themselues the inuentors and deuisers of a new discipline Militarie, (who how farre wide they are from the vnderstanding of all true discipline, all men of right consideration may evidently see by their writings, speakings, vaine opinions and actions); that they I say, in their malicious and friuolous libels do write (as aforesaid) that small bands of 150. are as readie to be reduced into any squadron, as great bands of .500. are. I therefore to make that, which I haue before written more apparant, and vtterlie to conuince their obstinate ignorances, will by comparing the best orders and waies of fourming of squadrons, both with great, and with small bandes, shewe with what great readines and facilitie, squadrons may be formed with a few great Compertiments out of great bandes of .500. to an Ensigne; and with what difficultie great squadrons are reduced into forme, with many little Compertiments out of small bandes of .150. to an Ensigne: that therby all men of consideration may evidently see the erronious and vnskilfull opinions Militarie that those our such men of warre do hold: And therefore I do  
for

An example to  
proue that  
great bands of  
Souldiers are  
more requisite  
then small  
bands.

for example alledge: That admit that a generall of an Army of .18000. footmen reduced into .6. Regiments of 3000. to euerie Regiment and .8000. 10000. or .12000. horsemen of diuers armors and weapons, with all other prouision and furniture belonging to such an Armie, to inuade some forren dominions; & that the whole 18000 footmen being deuided into 5. partes he had concluded (according to the commendable opinion of some notable men of warre that I haue knowne in my time) that .3. parts of the 5. should be all piquers and short weapons, or all piquers without any short weapons, to forme a vaungard, battle and Rereward, according to the manner and vse of the Italians and Spaniards of this time; and that the other two parts should be all weapons of volee; weare I say, determined to make a prooffe, whether little bandes of 150. or great bandes of 500. were most apte and ready to forme squadrons withal; and therefore hauing reduced 3. of the 6. Regiments into little bandes of 150. that is 20. bandes of 150. to euerie Regiment of 3000. and the other .3. Regiments into great bandes of .500. that is .6. bandes of 500. to euerie Regiment of 3000. he then geuing these or the like directiōs hereafter set down, should most manifestly see the great aptnes, dexteritie and readinesse of great bandes of .500. to reduce squadrons into, with the wonderfull vnreadinesse, great disorders and imperfections in reducing of squadrons into forme by little bandes of .150. consisting of .5. different weapons as aforesaid

The Lieutenant general therfore first to make prooffe whether the piquers of one of the regiments of the small bands, or the piquers of one of the Regiments of the great bands were more readie to be reduced into squadron, is to commaund that at a certen houre vpon a sound and warning giuen by his trompettor, two Coronells with their two Regiments the one consisting all of small bands of .150. and the other all of great bands of .500. should with all celeritie reduce themselves into their simple and single

single order of rankes: (which reducement of bandes into their simple, and single order, is euer to be performed before squadrons can with order and reason Militarie be formed), and that either in the place of Armes, if the Generall shal appoint that place, or otherwise if it shal please him to commaund both the Coronells at one time to march out of the Campe to two seuerall places & grounds appointed both of like distance from the fortifications of the Campe; there to reduce .3. parts of their Regiments which do consist of piquers, (the other two parts consisting weapons of vlee as aforesaid) into two seuerall squadrons, each of them 60. piquers in frunt, & 30. by flanks which are in each Regiment .1800. piquers: Then I say that the 3. partes of piquers of euerie great band of .500. being .300. and the other two parts of weapons of vlee in number 200. marching out of their quarters into the place of Armes, which is betwixte their quarter and the fortifications of the Campe, and there reducing themselves into their simple and single order of 100. rankes 5. in euerie ranke; or rather into 50. rankes of 10. in euerie ranke: I mean the one halfe of the weapons of vlee, that do consist of 100. marching before the ranks of y<sup>e</sup> piquers, and the other halfe of y<sup>e</sup> like number of weapons of vlee behinde the hindermost ranke of all the piquers, with the Ensigne according to all discipline in the middest of the piquers: And so all those 6. bandes of 500. vnder euerie Ensigne marching 10. in a ranke one after another out of the Campe towards the ground where they are to forme their squadron; whither being comne, the weapons of vlee that are in frunt of the first band, marching a conuenient distance to the right hand from before the piquers, to the intent to giue the piquers place, and to be readie to arme the forepart of the right flanke of the squadron: And the compertiment of piquers of this formost and first band being comne to the ground wheras they are to aduaunce their piques, and make a stande, and hauing perfourmed the same; the other halfe of

Soldiers are to be reduced into their simple and single order of rankes, before they are to be brought to any forme of squadron.

The great readinesse and dexteritie in forming of squadrons with great compertiments out of bands of 500.



the weapons of vollee of the same band that marche behind, who are to arme the forepart of the left flank of the squadron being drawne vp by their Conductors so large a distance on the left hand from their compertiment of piquers, as they may leaue ground enough betwixt them and their piquers to forme all the rest of the squadron : which whilst the first band of 500. is a performing; then the one halfe of the weapons of vollee of the second band that dooth follow the first band, being by their Conductors drawn from before their compertiment of piques, and marching vppe by the right flanke of the compertiment of the first bande of piquers, (that haue alreadie made their stand) vntill they come to the formost compertiment of the weapons of vollee; & y<sup>e</sup> second compertiment of 30. ranks of piquers 10. in a rank of y<sup>e</sup> said secōd band, marching vp by y<sup>e</sup> left flank of the first cōpertiment of that weapon vntill they find their first and last ranks equall in frunt and backe, with the first and last ranks of the first compertiment; and then the other halfe of the weapons of vollee, that marched behind the second compertiment of piquers being by their Conductors drawne so farre to the left hand, vntill they come to find the hindermost rankes of the other compertiment of weapons of vollee that was marched thither before; And so subsequently the formost compertiments of the weapons of vollee of the third band of 500. marching vp by the right flanke of the piquers that they find alreadie reduced; as the other two foremost compertimentes of the former bands haue doone; And the third compertiment of piquers marching vppe by the left flanke of the other two Compertiment, before reduced, vntill they finde themselves of equal frunt with them: And then the other that is, the last compertiment of weapons of vollee of the same band, being drawne from behind their piquers to the other two compertiments that are already of the left hand: And so subsequentlie the three formost compertiments

ments of weapons of volec of the three last bands, marching vp by the right flanke of the piquers before them, to the intent to arme aswell the hinder part of the right flanke, as the backe, or Rereward of the Squadron: And the three compertimentes of piquers, of the said three last bands, marching vp by the left flanke of the other 3. compertiments already reduced, as also by the left flanks orderlie the one of the other, vntill they find themselves all of one equal frunt; the whole Squadron by this means, is now reduced in a very short time into forme of battle, hauing in frunt 60. piquers, and by flankes 30. rankes: which whole Squadron being reduced thus into forme of 60. piquers in frunt, and 30. rankes by flankes, doth conteine 1800. piquers as aforesaid; the hindermost & last three compertiments of weapons of volec marching to the left flanke of the Squadron, readie to arme the same according to the direction of the Coronell or Sergeant Maior.

Or otherwise, if the same said Regiment of 3000. beeing ready to dislodge and march out of their quarter, will vse a more short waie of reducement into Squadron, and to arme the same with weapons of volec: Then the Sergeant Maior may giue order that euerie one of the 6. bands of 500. to euerie Ensign be reduced into their simple and single order of rankes in this sort following; that is that the Captains and officers of the 3. first bands that he will reduce into forme, and begin his Squadron withal, doo reduce all their weapons of volec that are to arme the frunt and right flanke of the Squadron into compertiments of 10. in a ranke, or fewer as he shall think most meet: And that the said seuerall compertiments of euerie one of those three bands being led by their Conductors shall march and follow one another: And that all the piquers of the 6. whole bandes be reduced into 6. compertiments of 10. in euerie ranke from frunt to back, readie vpon the sound of the drums to follow the compertiments of weapons of volec; As also beeing distinctlie

led by their Captaines to march and follow one another: And then that the three compertiments of weapons of volec, that do belong to the three last compertiments of piquers, y<sup>e</sup> are to arme the left flank and back of the Squadron shall reduce themselves into 10. in a rank throughout, or any smaller number, in like sort as he hath before giuen direction to the three first compertiments of weapons of volec.

Al which reducementes into their simple or single order beeing performed; then vpon the strokes and sounds of the drummes, or of the Coronels trompettor, they are presentlie to march out at that Sallie, turnpique, or barriers of the camp, that it hath before pleased y<sup>e</sup> General, or L. Marshal to giue direction: And the three foremost compertiments of weapons of volec being comne neere to the place where the Squadron is to bee formed, they are presently to march to the right flanke and side of the same place, & there to reduce themselves into as many different forms, as the sergeant Maior hath before giuen direction: At which instant, the first compertiment of 30. ranks of piquers 10. in a rank, doo march vp to the place of reducement, whither being comn, vpon y<sup>e</sup> sound of the drums for that purpose, they are presently to aduance their piques and make a pause. At which time & instant the second compertiment, and the third compertiment both of like numbers of 10. piquers in euery one ranke from frunt to back, do march vp the second by the right flanke of the first compertiment that hath already made a pause or stand, and the thirde by the left flanke of the said first compertiment: At which time and instant also the fourth compertiment dooth march vppe by the right flanke of the second compertiment, and the fifth by the left flanke of the third compertiment.

And the sixt or last compertiment by the right flanke of the fourth compertiment, vntill all those 5. compertiments doo finde their first rankes equall in frunt, and their last rankes equall in backe or rereward, with the first and  
last



last rankes of the said first compertiment, During which time and instant of the reducement of the said 6. compertiments of piquers into squadron, the three last compertimentes of weapons of vollee doo march vp by the left flanke of the squadron of piquers now already formed, and there are to reduce themselues into the like formes that the foremost 3. compertiments of weapons of vollee haue doone, vpon the right flanke of the squadron: Or otherwise as it shall please the Coronell or Sergeant Maior to giue direction, for the arming of the said left flanke and back of the aforesaid piquers.

And now this squadron being by this kind of reducement, reduced into forme, with fleeces, wings, troupes, and other formes of weapons of vollee, with great readinesse and celeritie; al men of consideration may euidentlie see, with what great facilitie and dexteritie a few great compertiments of piquers and halbardiers for the guard of the Ensignes, out of great bands of 500. are reduced into squadron of 60. fouldiors in frunt and 30. rankes by flanke, or into any other farre greater squadron, with weapons of vollee reduced into diuers formes to arme, the frunt, flanks and backe, according to the commandement of the Generall, or Coronell, or Sergeant Maior.

But now let vs see how the other aforesaid regiment of 3000. deuided into small bandes of hundreds and fifties, (according to the contrarie opinion) three parts of them piquers, and the other two partes weapons of vollee (as aforesaid) may with most celeritie be reduced into y<sup>e</sup> like squadron of 1800. piquers before set downe; that is, 60. in frunt, and 30 by flanks: I say that to form that squadrō, each one of the 20. Captaines must according to all order and discipline, first reduce their bandes vnder their Ensignes into their simple and single order of rankes, as also into their different compertiments, as the great bāds before haue doone.

And because that they may the more readily forme the

Squadron, it will behoove them to haue speciall regard to the number of 60. souldiors that their Squadron must conteine in euery ranke from frunt to backe, as also that there must be 30. ranks by flankes: which beeing by them considered, they then must reduce all the piquers of euerie one of their bandes into such numbers of ranks, as that they may be by flank, in equall numbers of ranks with the Squadron that they intend to forme of 30. ranks: which to accomplish, they must reduce their compertiments of piquers of each one of their bandes into 30. rankes of 3. in a ranke: which number being 3. partes of the 5. partes of each one of their bands as aforesaid; doth amount iust to 90. piquers, the other two partes consisting of weapons of volée beeing 60. So as they must forme their Squadron with the compertiments of 90. piquers, 3. in euery ranke, as the great bandes did forme their Squadrons with compertiments of 300. piquers 10 in euery ranke, which to perform, (considering that they are 20. compertiments of 90. piquers to euery compertiment, out of 20 little bands, as the compertiments of the great bandes were but only 6. compertiments of 300 piquers to euery compertiment, out of the 6. great bands of 500. to euerie band) will require 3. or 4. times longer time, then to reduce them into Squadron by the 6. compertiments of the great bandes as aforesaid.

Or incase that the Coronell would giue order that those little bands being reduced into their simple and single order of .3. in euerie ranke throughout euerie Compertiment as aforesaid, should come to ioine 3. or 4. Compertiments of piquers out of 3. or 4. little bandes, thinking thereby to forme the Squadron with greater celeritie: They I say shall first before they bring that to passe, finde themselues greatly confused to forme the same, by their seeing so great a number of little bandes dispersed ouer the place of Armes, which do occupy a great deale more ground in the said place, then 6. great bands do: Besides that it will require a double, or rather a treble time more,  
first

Diuers disorders and confusions that doe ensue in forming of Squadrons with little compertiments out of bands of 150.

first to reduce 20 little bandes into their simple and single order of ranks, and little Compertiments of so many different sorts of weapons in so many places dispersed: and then to drawe out and to incorporate such a number of small Compertiments one with another, and after to reduce them into one bodie of squadron as aforesaid, then only with 6. greate Compertiments of piquers to forme the like squadron, & to arme the same with many formes of different sorts of weapons of volec in frunt, flankes and backe. By all which alleadged both *Pro et contra*, as also performed in the sight and presence of such a generall as aforesaid, I thinke it would be euident vnto him, and to all other men of consideration and Iudgement in his Armie, that this little squadron formed but of .1800. piquers, is a great deale sooner and with more facilitie performed with the Compertiments of a few great bandes, then with a great number of little Compertiments, out of many little bandes as aforesaid: which if it be so in so small a squadron where the little Compertiments of 90. piquers marching 3. in a ranke doo beare length in number of ranks by flankes to forme such a little battle without patching and peeing so many little compertiments to forme the squadron withall: what then if the Generall should command the Coronels and Sergeants Maiors of 2. of the 3. Regiments of those little bands to reduce all the piquers that according to the former diuision doo amount vnto 3600. piquers, into a squadron of 90. piquers in frunt, and 40. ranks by flankes? when that to perform the same, they must not onlie first of all reduce euery one of their little bands into their simple, and single order of ranks of 3. or 4. or more in euerie ranke; but because that their compertiments of 30. ranks 3. in euerie ranke are too short by 10. ranks to make 40. ranks, they must not onlie incorporate themselues by flankes with the like number of ranks; but also must with pieces of other bandes, patch and piece their incorporated Compertiments, and after the patching and piecing of them, then reduce and  
forme



forme their Squadron: which to performe doth require a verie long time, and doth greatlie confuse & confound the Coronels and Sergeants Maiors, and al the rest of the officers of those Regiments to their great disgrace and reproach: wheras contrariwise the 3600. piquers of the 2 Regiments of 6000. that do consist but of 12. great bands being in the place of Armes reduced into 10. Compartiments of 9. piquers in euerie ranke, in each Compartiment from frunt to backe, are with great facilitie, & without any cōfusion to be reduced, by doubling themselves by flanke, or flanks as aforesaid into the aforesaid Squadron of 90. piquers in frunt, and 40. rankes by flanks: which being so, as by all reason and practise Military it is, then if the Generall should giue funder order to the three Coronels or Sergeants Maiors of al the three Regiments of 9000. that do consist of little bands (as aforesaid) to reduce al their piquers, which according to the proportion and diuisions aforesaid, do amount iust vnto 5400. piquers; besides the other two partes that are weapons of vlee, into one bodie of Squadron of 108. piquers in frunt and of 50. rankes by flanke: how wonderfully then would the Sergeants Maiors & officers of those Regiments find themselves confused to forme so great a Squadron of the peeces and patches (as they may be well termed) of 60. little bandes; when euerie one of those single Compartiments do not only lacke number in frunt to make conuenient compartiments to forme the frunt of the batle with celeritie; but also are a great deale too short by flanks to forme the aforesaid Squadron in number of ranks by flanks and therefore must of necessitie, not only incorporate a great number of little Compartiments, and peeces of compartiments with other little compartiments by flanks therby to make them to come to the iust number in frunt of 108. piquers; but also must peece and patch euerie one of those Compartiments with the peeces of other little Compartiments in backe or Rereward, thereby after to reduce, forme, and being their Squadron by flanks to  
haue

haue the iust length of 50. rankes: which to performe, dooth cause so great a disorder and confusion in the officers executing of the directions of the Coronelles and Sergeants Maiors, as it is neuer to make an end: whereof insueth great noises and rumors, by calling, by swearing, by commaunding, and countermaunding, and by this and by that.

Wheras contrariwise, the compertiments of piquers of the other three Regiments of great bandes of 500. as aforesaid, consisting of 300. piquers to euerie compertiment, may with great dexteritie, quietnesse and facilitie, without the aforeaid peeing and patching of compertiments with compertiments form the aforeaid squadron of 108. in frunt, and 50. by flanks, with their single compertiments, without any one band, or compertiment borrowing the one of the other: As for example, to form the aforesaide squadron of 108. piquers in frunt, and 50. rankes by flanks, (the three Regimentes of 3000. to euerie Regiment consisting of 18. bandes 500. to euerie ensigne: which of piquers and weapons of vlee are in all 9000. Of the which there are 3. partes piquers, and two partes weapons of vlee, as aforesaide, that is 5400. piquers, and 3600. souldiours of weapons of vlee) the compertimentes of piquers of all those 18. bandes consisting euery one of 300. piquers, and euery one of those compertimentes of 300. beeing reduced into their simple and single order of 6. in euerie ranke, from frunt to backe, are iust in number 50. rankes of 6. souldiours in euery ranke.

All which 18. compertimentes of 300. piquers to euerie compertiment marching euery one of them 6. in a ranke, (as aforesaid) beeing led and drawne vp by their Captains by the flanke, or flanks the one of the other, (according vnto any of the orders that I haue before very particularly set down for y forming of squadrons and battles) are without any kinde of trouble, disorder or rumor, with great facility reduced into y aforeaid battle and

Q

squadron

squadron of 108. piquers in euery ranke from frunt to backe, and of 50. rankes by flankes, which squadron in al consisteth of 5400. piquers as aforesaid.

Diuers confu-  
sions that doe  
ensue of many  
little comperti-  
ments of pi-  
quers.

And this dexteritie and facilitie of forming of great *squadrōs* without any disorder or confusiō doth proceed of the great compertiments that are drawne out of great bands: whereas farre otherwise, to forme the same saide squadron with 60. compertiments of 90 piquers, 3. in a ranke in euery compertiment, drawne out of 60. little bandes of 150. to euery Ensigne, to the intent to forme the said squadron: the Captaines and officers after that they haue reduced euery one of their bandes into their simple and single order of ranks, (which is the first thing for all seruices in the field that according to al discipline ought to be performed) must then because their litle compertiments of 90. piquers doo consist but of 30. rankes, 3. in a ranke, go and find another compertiment of the like number of another band to ioine with them by flanke, thereby to make their compertiment of 6. in euery rank. But because their two compertiments incorporated by flankes as aforesaid, doo lacke 20. rankes of 6. in euerie ranke to make the iust length of the squadron by flanke that consisteth of 50. rankes: Another Captaine must bring his whole compertiment of 90. piquers, which do consist of 15. rankes 6. in a ranke, and ioine them at the backe of the other two compertiments; and yet those 3. Captaines must borrowe out of another compertiment of a fourth band 5. rankes more of 6. in a ranke, which are 30. piquers to make out the full number of 50. rankes, 6. in euery ranke; so as the fourth Captain that hath lent 30. piquers, dooth remaine but with a peece of his compertiment of 60. piquers, with the which he must after incorporate, and peece and patch other compertiments either to make length by flanke, or bredth in frunt. And in this sort or in the like with small difference all the ~~like~~ <sup>little</sup> compertiments of 90. piquers in each compertiment as aforesaid must incorporate, peece and patch by flankes and



and backe all the rest of their compertiments, and peeces of compertimentes vntill they haue formed their squadron: which kind of reducing, peeing and patching, to forme a squadron, dooth breed such a wonderfull confusion in such a number of little compertiments dispersed in the fieldes, as the Sergeants Maiors and other chiefe commanders wil finde themselues wonderfullie confused and confounded in their directions for the forming of their squadron, and the Captaines and other inferior officers in the performing and executing of the same.

And as these before alledged confusions and disorders doo insue in forming of a squadron of piquers with such little compertiments: euen so dooth there ensue as great or greater confusions in reducing a farre greater number of little compertimentes of weapons of volée, that do consist of three different sorts of weapons, as of Archers, mosquetiers and harquebuziers, into diuers formes and emploiments; All which reducementes of squadrons into forme with sleeues, winges, troupes, and forlorne hopes of weapons of volée, and other such like doo require fower or fve times longer time to performe, then with a few great compertiments of piquers & weapons of volée out of bandes of 500. to reduce such great squadrons into forme as aforesaid with sleeues, winges, forlorne hopes, &c. of weapons of volée, as all men that are not obstinatelie ignorant may by that which I haue before declared most manifestlie see.

The testimonie and prooffe whereof was euidentlie seene at such time as there were certen great squadrons formed, or rather with great disorder, trouble, and confusion wonderfullie deformed heere in Essex the yeare 1588. Which proceeded of nothing so much as of the lacke of vnderstanding of such as should haue reduced the whole Armie into great bandes of 500. to euery Ensigne, with conuenient and well sorted compertimentes, or of 400. or of 300. to euery Ensigne at the fewest. Whereas farre otherwise, the bands of the whole Armie

Here it is to be noted that although the Author doth praise & allowe great bands of 500 in the which diuers different sorts of weapons are incorporated, to be more conuenient for the forming of squadrons then small bands of 150. or 200. of the like different sortes of weapons: yet he doth not disallow that in a puiſant army there shuld be some small bands of 100. or 150. amongst the great; but those onely of weapons of volée, as of Archers or harquebuziers, incorporated with some conuenient numbers of halberdiers or battle axes, for diuers purposes,

did consist of diuers different numbers, as of 150. of 200 of 300. of 400. of 500. and of 600. to an ensigne, and in all those bands, the compertimentes of the different sorts of weapons were so ill sorted, and in so great disproportion, as the same with the lacke of skill of such as should haue reformed those imperfections, were the very causes that when they went about to reduce and forme any squadron with fleeces, winges, &c: they fell into manie errors and confusions, as all those that were there of any vnderstanding in matters militarie might euidentlie see. Vppon all which reasons and examples of reducing of great and small bands into squadrons with so many imperfections, confusions, and failings as are incident and doo ordinarilie ensue in reducing of little compertiments of small bandes into diuers formes of squadrons with fleeces, winges, forlorne hopes, &c, with the great perfectiones and easinesse of reducing the great compertimentes of great bandes into all sortes of formes with great facilitie as is before declared, considered; I come to conclude that the aforesaid Lieutenant Generall, or any other Chiefetaine of right vnderstanding, obseruation, and iudgement, would forme the footmen of his Armie into great bandes, and not into such small bandes as are before mentioned. And thus farre concerning the proouing that great bandes of 500. are more conuenient for all purposes and employments, then small bands of 150. or 200. are.

*Concerning Ensignes and Ensignebearers of priuate bandes of footmen, as also concerning the Standard, and Standard bearer of an Emperour, or of a King.*

**H**Eere it is to be noted, because Ensignebearers of footmen are to march in the midst of the armed men, as well in squadrons as in priuate bandes; and therewithall to be euer ready to take their places vppon the assembling, reducing, or marching of such bandes: that

that they with their Ensignes ought to be lodged in their Captaines tents or lodgings, or verie neere vnto their Captains; alwaies accompanied with one of the drummers, and the phifer of the band; & the other to accompanie the Captaine. And in case there be but onely one drummer and a phifer, then they are alwaies to accompanie and lodge where the Lieutenant and ensignebearer with his Ensigne in their soldiers quarter doo lodge; and that, in respect, that they may with al celeritie by the stroke and sound of the drum assemble their band vpon all sudden Alarmes, or mutinies or other accidents.

Where Ensigne-bearers footmen are to be lodged.

Also it is to bee noted that an Ensignebearer in the field, carrieng his Ensigne displayed ought to carrie the same vpright, and neuer, neither in towne nor field, nor in sport, nor earnest to fetch florishes about his head with his Ensign staffe, & tassata of his Ensigne, as the Ensignebearers of London do vpon midsummer night; because that such florishes in all true discipline are houlden for mockeries: Howbeit sometimes to aduaunce, lift vp; and raise his Ensigne higher vpon certen occasions it is verie allowable.

How an Ensigne-bearer in service in the fildes ought to carrie his Ensigne.

Also an Ensignebearer carying his Ensigne woond vp about the Ensign staffe, or else he carrying the same open, & leaning it to his shoulder, ought marching doune a hill to gather together the lower parte of the tassata of his Ensigne in such sort as it may not touch the ground: And therefore Ensignes of a conuenient size and not too large and great, are far better and more conuenient then Ensignes that are very large.

Ensignes of a conuenient bredthe and lengthe more better then Ensignes that are verie large.

Also the halbarders that do march in the ranke of the Ensignes, and are for the gard of them ought to carrie their halbardes with such respect as they ought not to teare nor touch any part of the Ensignes as neare as they can possible.

With what respect the halbardes that are for the guard of the Ensignes are to march.

Also all Ensignebearers marching in the field either amongst their single companies, or being reduced into squadron vpon the discouerie of the Enemy are present-

How Ensigne-bearers vpon the sight and nere approach of the enemy are to manage their Ensignes.



ly to vnwind, open & display their Ensigns: but yet if the wind be great, they may gather together the lower parte or taffata of their Ensignes, and leane the Ensignestaffe and Ensigne to their shoulders vntill they approach neerer to the enemy; at which time all Ensignebearers ought to display and aduance their ensignes carrying them in their left hands, to the intent that they may bee the more ready vpon the neer approach and encountring with the enemy, with their right hands to drawe their swordes and defend their Ensignes, by reason that they ought not to fight nor thrust with the points of their ensigne staues, but only in assaults of Towns, or vpon some other great extremitie, but to carry them vpriight, and sometimes aduanced to the intent that they may be still in the fight of their souldiors.

How an Ensignebearer marching by an Emperour or king, or their Lieutenant generall is to behaue himselfe.

Also if any Ensignebearer or ensignebearers in their band or bandes, happen to march by an Emperour or King, or by the Lieutenant Generall, they ought to carrie them displaid and aduanced, and when they come almost ouer against such a Prince or his Lieutenant Generall, they ought to pull downe their ensignes lower, & bow downe forward the point and taffeta of their ensign or ensignes, not directlie towards the prince, or Lieutenant Generall, but directly towards the waie that they are marching: and at the same instant, they ought also to bow something forward their heads and bodies, in token of respect and reuerence, without any waies moouing or touching their burgonets, which ought to be alwaies fast tied with a taffeta vnder their chinnes.

How Ensignebearers are to vse their ensignes when the Squadron maketh a pause.

Also when a single band or companie of souldiors or a squadron of diuers bandes marching in the fieldes shall come to aduance their piques and make a stay, or pause, then the Ensignebearer of that single band if it be alone, or all the Ensignebearers of a whole Squadron must display and aduance their Ensignes.

Also a squadron of diuers bands marching in the fields, it is lawfull for all the Ensignebearers in their ranke or  
rankes

rankes of Ensignes to carrie their Ensignes woond vp about their Ensignestaues, rested or leaned to their shoulders so as in the ranke of Ensignes or in each ranke of Ensignes, if the Squadron be so great that there be more then one ranke of Ensignes, that one Ensignebearer in each ranke must carrie his Ensigne open and displayed: and he during the time that he so carrieth his Ensigne ought to be in the midlt of the ranke of the Ensignes, vntill such time as he to ease himselfe doth wind vp his Ensigne, and retire againe to his owne place, be it on the right or left hand, leauing the middle place to the Ensignebearer that doth succcede and supplie his place with his banner or Ensigne displayed. But it is to be noted that in a Squadron whereas there be diuers Ensignes, for some of them to carrie their ensignes woonde vp and leaned against their shoulders & others displaied, vprihted, and aduaunced, and other ensignebearers also their ensignes opened and leaned to their shoulders, it is verie vnfoldiorlike and vncomely to see such varietie of carrying of ensignes in one Squadron, & therefore either they ought all to carry their ensignes woond vp and leaned against their shoulders sauing only one ensignebearer with his ensigne displayed, vprihted, or aduaunced as aforesaid; or incase in calme weather or vpon any other occasion, the ensignebearers like not so to do, then they may carrie them al opened & displaied, but in any wise all after one sort, sauing only he that is the chiefe ensignebearer for the time, who ought to cary his ensigne vpriht, opened & displaied, although all y other ensignebearers do carry their ensignes woond vp as aforesaid.

How all the ensignebearers of a Squadron marching in the field are to carrie their Ensignes

But all this before notwithstanding, here it is to be noted that in case an Emperor or a Kinges Standard be in any battle or Squadron of footmen in the field, that then all the ensignebearers of priuate bandes are to receiue their orders & directions from the Standerbearer of the same Emperor or King, whether they shall carrie their ensignes woonde vp, or any waies open, with all other directions.

All Ensignebearers are to receaue their directions from the Standard bearer of the Emporor or king if he be in the field.

And

Where the  
Standcardbea-  
rer of an Em-  
perpr or king  
should be pla-  
ced.

When the  
Standardbea-  
rer of an Em-  
peror or of a  
king is to dis-  
play his Stan-  
dard.

Certen other  
particularities  
concerning the  
Standard and  
Standdardbea-  
rer of an Em-  
peror or of a  
Kinge.

And also it is to be noted that the said standardbearer with his standard, or his deputy standardbearer, when the standardbearer is disposed to ease himselfe, is alwaies to hold the middle and chiefe place of the ranke of ensigns, and therewithall that hee should neuer display his Standard, as other ensignebearers of priuate bandes doo, but onely vpon the assured doubt and expectation of battle, the enemies Armie being in fight in the field, or else vpon some other great and principall occasion; and yet not then neither without the speciall commandment of the prince or his Lieutenant Generall: which said displaying of the Princes standard, ought to be performed with certain notable respects, praiers, and ceremonies: which because I do not certenlie know them all, I omitte. And therewithal it is to be further noted that the standardbearer of an Emperour or King being alwaies either a Nobleman or a Knight, doth seldome himselfe carrie the standard, but vpon certain great occasions, and therefore he hath alwaies .2. or .3. esquiers of great reputation and valor to supplie his place in carring the standard, the enemy being not in fight in the field; but the enemy being in fight, he is presentlie to leaue his horse and to retire himselfe into the squadron and ranke of ensignes, readie to take his standard into his owne handes vpon any important occasion: And besides when he commeth neare to the place where he shall lodge, be it in Campe or Towne which ough to be in the Lieutennante generalls lodging or at least very neare vnto the same, he then being on foot, must himselfe with great respect & reuerence take and carrie the standard be it imperiall, or roiall, and place it in his lodging vnder a strong and verie conuenient garde of soldiours, and so likewise in the morning vpon the occasion of dislodging he himselfe being stronglie accompanied ought to take the standard into his own hands, and to march and take his place according to the directiō of the Prince or his Lieutennant general, which being by him performed, he may then deliuer the standard



ward vnto one of his deputies giuing vnto him a great charge therewith, and so march out of the battle & then take his horse and ride a little either before the Squadron to ease himselfe, or else to accompanie the Prince or the Lieutenant Generall if any of them both bee neare vnto the same battle or else not. And these particularities concerning these matters aforesaid are such as I doo at this present remember, although there be others that I haue in times past obserued which with length of time I haue forgotten.

*Certen orders, directions and brieue speeches to be vsed vnto Harquebaziers, Piquers, and battleaxes, when they are in skirmish with their enemies in the field.*

**S**kirmishes both on horsebacke and on foot doo begin vpon such, and so many diuers, and infinite occasions when two puissant Armies that are enemies one to y other are in the field, as no man is able to particular the number of them: And therefore I will as not requisite ouerpasse them; But because hithervnto I haue handled the ordering, reducing and forming more particularlie of footmen then of horsemen, I will by the help of Almighty God in this place proceed to certen orders, directions and brieue speeches, that are to be vsed vnto bands of harquebuziers entring into skirmish, or being in skirmish; as also how they should bee reduced into diuers orders and formes for diuers effectes and purposes: which when I haue performed, I wil then proceed to the reducing and ordering of other weapons of vollee, as of mosquetiers, and archers into their conuenient formes. And therefore it is first to be noted y there be 4. different and principal waies for bandes of harquebuziers to enter into skirmish and to maintaine themselves being in skirmish, which although they seeme not much to differ, yet their differences are so great, as they are to be obserued by al skilfull leaders and conductors of harquebuziers, and by the soldiours themselves.

4 different and  
principall  
waies for  
harquebuziers  
to enter into  
skirmishes.

Of the which 4. the first is vpon some occasions to

R

skirmish

The first way  
for harquebu-  
ziers to enter  
into skirmish.

skirmish only with loose shot, backt some good & con-  
uenient distance behind them with light armed halbar-  
diers: yea and of piquers also incase they doubt y charge  
of horsmen, but then those loose shot must deuide them-  
selues into small societies either of 3. or else of 4. harque-  
buziers to second and supplie one anothers place: and  
that is to be vnderstood in this sort: Incase that they doo  
deuide themselues into societies of threes, then haue  
they but onely three dischargings, and that is when the  
formost soldior hath in trauessing his ground & with good  
aduisement discharged at the enemy, and trauessing his  
ground doth retire behind his fellowes to charge again; y  
then y second harquebuzier should aduance forward to  
espie som aduantage to discharge his harquebuzer, not in  
hast at the aire, but with leisure at his enemy that hee es-  
pieth standing still or in slow motion; which when hee  
hath performed, and trauessing his ground, he dooth re-  
tire: then the third harquebuzier aduancing forward  
and trauessing his ground should with good aduisement  
discharge his peece at the enemy that he espieth stan-  
ding still or in slow motion, whilest the other two har-  
quebuziers his companions, before retired doo charge  
again: which by him performed, then he is to trauesse  
his ground and to begin againe to charge, retiring bee-  
hind, and somthing wide of the hindermost of the three.  
And by this kind of loose skirmishing of many societies  
of threes dispersed in the field, the formost of euery three  
next vnto the enemy with his peece charged, trauessing  
his ground, and espying when to discharge his peece ef-  
fectuallie (as aforesaid) dooth giue time and leisure, to  
the other two of his societie retired behind, to charge  
their peeces againe: But because that the chiefe effect of  
harquebuziers in skirmish dooth consist principallie in  
three things; that is, in the well charging of their pee-  
ces, which cannot be well performed without conueni-  
ent time and leisure; the second, in leisurely discharging,  
although not from steady and firm point at blank; which  
can be seldome performed at men, or by men in motion;  
and

The commodi-  
ties that ensue  
to harquebuzi-  
ers by this first  
way of skirmi-  
shing.

Three princi-  
pall waies  
wherein the  
chiefe effects  
of harquebuzi-  
ers in skirmish  
do consist.

and therefore they are to take their sights at the endes of their peeces, at such their enemies as are in slowest motion, and so make the best point and blanke that they may by guesse from the endes of their peeces.

And the third which is of no lesse importance then the former two is ; that harquebuziers doo not discharge their peeces at the enemy out of conuenient distances ; for if they doo, then how well soeuer they haue charged their peeces, and with what leisure and aduise ment soeuer they doo discharge the same at men in motion, they doo worke verie little or no effect, as well in respect that no harquebuziers howe good soeuer they bee, can take their sights so certenlie from point at blanke in a great distance, as they may in a much nearer distance ; as also that they can a great deale lesse take their sights from the ends of their peeces at their enemies in motion a great distance off, although it be within the points and blankes of their peeces : besides many other causes and particularities concerning the same in my booke of discourses by me set forth 1590. contained: All which well considered, it dooth behoue all good and skilfull harquebuziers not to discharge their peeces aboute 20. 30. or 40. paces at the vttermost, although their peeces will carrie point and blanke a much greater distance.

Harquebuziers in skirmish are not to discharge their peeces aboute 20. 30. or 40 paces in distance.

But here it is to be noted that this kind of skirmishing oflose shot of societies of threes is not so good by a great deale as to skirmish in societies of 4. in euery societie ; and that by reason that euery formost harquebuzier of 4. next to the enimie discharging his peece as effectually as he may and retiring behind the hindermost of his societie to charge againe, whilest the second aduaucing forward and trauersing his ground doth supplie the place of the first harquebuzier that did first discharge and is now retired as aforesaid, and so consequently the third harquebuzier vpon the discharging of his fellowe before him, (that at the first was the second) to aduance and supply his place, and then againe the fourth that did first of all

Societies of threes not so good by a great deale for harquebuziers to skirmish in as societies of foures.



discharge, and hath now againe very well charged his peece, doth (vpon the discharging and retiring of his fellowe before him) aduance forward, and traueſſing his ground ſupplie his place: which orderly discharging & recharging againe, and discharging, & recharging againe and againe with good aduiſement, doth by the ſocieties of 4. giue more time and leiſure to euerie harquebuzier that hath diſcharged his peece to retire and charge verie well againe without heating of his peece, then ſocieties of threes aforeſaid can doo, conſidering that in thoſe skirmiſhes of looſe ſhot, it is conuenient that onelie one of euerie ſocietie of 4. ſhould bee formoſt, and ſhould diſcharge alone to the intent aſwel to giue leiſure to their fellowes one after another to recharge againe, as alſo to haue 2. or 3. harquebuziers continuallie ready with their peeces charged one after another ſtil to aduance forward and ſupplie the others place ready to diſcharge at the enemy. For if they ſhould diſcharge 2. or 3. or al at one time, then vpon their error eſpied by the enemies, and taking the aduantage thereof by a ſudden approch, they ſhould find themſelues vnſupplied and vnſuccoured, the one of the other to their great danger and miſchiefe:

But here it may be demanded what I doo call the well charging of peeces of weapons of fire? Whervnto I anſwer, That I doo allow neither harquebuze nor moſquet for well charged in ſeruices of the fieelde, vnleſſe they bee charged with conuenient charges of powder, and with ſoſte browne paper, or the refuge endes of matches, or ſomething elſe, with their ſkowring ſtickes thruſt cloſe to the powder to reſtraine the ſame, and likewise vpon the bullet the like or a more quantitie to keepe cloſe and reſtraine the bullet: or when at the leaſt, I would that ſome ſuch thing ſhould be thruſt vpon the bullet with the ſkowring ſtick to keep the ſame cloſe to the powder; & therewithall to the intent that euerie ſouldior vpon his lacke of bullets might vſe his fellowes bullets, I would  
that

Now harque-  
buzes and  
moſquets  
ought to bee  
charged.

that all the harquebuzes throughout the field should be of one Caliuier and heighth; and that all the ordinarie bullettes for the field, I meane not the full bullets that first with great leisure they charge their peeeces withall before they march out of the Campe, which are or ought to be of the iust Caliuier and heighth of their harquebuzes, but the ordinarie bullets for skirmish: that those bullets I say should not be aboue two bores lower then the heighth of their peeeces, whereas farre otherwise the most bullettes for the field heere in England as well of Mosquets as of harquebuzes are 4. 5. and many 6. bores lower then the heighth of the peeeces, which with the souldiors not restraining the powder nor bullettes as aforesaid, is the cause, that the powder how good soeuer dooth neither carrie the bullets so farre point and blanke, nor yet doo giue so violent blowes as beeing otherwise well charged with more full bullets they would doo, nor yet can possible shoot with any certentie, although it were from a steadie rest either at horses or men standing still within point and blanke, by reason that such bullets doo naturallie mount and flie wide, howe true soeuer the peeeces are, besides that the powder for lacke of restraining as aforesaid, dooth lie in the Cannon of the peece loose, and the bullet through the too much smalnesse thereof in comparison of the peece doth ypon euerie little accident fall out and droppe to the ground: whereas ordinarie bullets for the field, that are not aboue two bores lower then the heighth of their peeeces, doo carry the bullets (the peeeces being otherwise true and well charged as aforesaide) further point and blanke, and with a great deale more certentie: and besides doo giue a more forcible blow as aforesaid then such ouer small bullets can doo.

All the harquebuzes throughout the field ought to be of one Caliuier & heighth.

All the ordinarie bullets for the field ought not to bee aboue 2. bores lower then the heighth of their peeeces.

The discommodities of bullets that are 4. 5. or 6 bores lower then the heighth of their peeeces,

But now the second way of skirmishing is, that such little societies of threes and of fowers may skirmish by discharging their peeeces, almost, or neere about one time: but that must be performed by the discharging and

The second way for harquebuziers to skirmish in.

retiring to charge again of such little troupes, other such little societies of like numbers that are a conuenient waie distant vpon both their flanks but something retired, and therefore haue kept their shot, aduancing forward, as well to espy some aduantage to giue their volees at their enemies effectually, as to giue time and leisure to other little troupes that haue discharged, and therefore retired to recharge and aduance forward againe.

The third way  
of skirmish.

The third waie of skirmishing is of greater troupes as of 6. of 9. of 12. of 15. of 18. or of 21. And this kind of skirmishing in so great troupes doth resemble the first mentioned skirmishing of loose shot of 3. souldiors in euerie societie, and that in this sort; that euen as the societies of 3. did deuide themselues into 3. single discharginges as aforesaid, so must these greater troupes deuide their discharginges into 3. volees: as for example, if the troupe be of 6. then the 2. foremost may discharge at or neere about one time, and then trauesing their grounds retire behind the hindermost two, to charge againe, whilst the two second being now foremost doo aduance forward to espie their aduantage to discharge effectually: which when they haue perfourmed, then they likewise are to retire againe recharging vntil they be hindermost, giuing place vnto their next two fellows to giue their voloe as aforesaid: which being by the second two performed, then are the last two (who did first discharge and haue now recharged againe) to aduance forward againe towards the enemy to giue time to their fellows retired to recharge againe: but if the troups be of greater numbers as of 9. then their diuisions of voloe are of 3. harquebuziers at a time, as those of 6. were but of two; and so likewise their troupes being of 12. then their diuisions of discharging are likewise of 3. volees, y<sup>e</sup> is 4. to discharge at or neere about one time: And in case that the troupes be of 15. then they are to deuide their discharginges into 3. volees of 5. at a time, that is of 3. times 5. And in case that the troupes be so great as of 18. then they are likewise



No troups of  
shott are to  
giue their  
volees in diui-  
sions about the  
number of 21.

wise to deuide their volees into 3. times 6. harquebuziers: And if of 21. then of 3. times 7. harquebuziers, euery 7. to giue their volees one after another in the order and sort before declared, greater then the which for diuers causes I would haue no troupes of harquebuziers in the field for to giue their volees in three diuisions as aforesaid.

The fourth way  
of skirmishing.

But now the fourth sort of giuing of volees in troupe, is of 4. diuisions, which resembleth the second discharging of loose shot of societies of 4. harquebuziers, for as those societies of 4. soldiors did deuide themselves into 4. single dischargings for the causes aforesaid, so these greater troupes are to deuide themselves into 4. dischargings or volees, and that in this sort: the smallest troupe that are to performe the same are 8. which number is to be deuided into 4. volees of two of the formost harquebuziers to discharge or giue their vollee at or neare about one time, and to retire to charg againe & giue place to their fellowes as aforesaid, and so subsequently, all the rest by two harquebuziers continually aduanced to discharge, and other 2. continually retiring to recharge to performe the like: and in case that their troupes be of 12. then they may deuide their volees into 4. as of 3. harquebuziers to giue their vollee at one time, and if they be of 16. then their diuisions of vollee may be of 4. harquebuziers all at one time, and in case that their troupes be of 20. then their 4. diuisions of vollee may be of 5. harquebuziers at a time, greater then the which nūber of 20. or 21. as aforesaid I would not in mine opinion for diuers causes haue any troupes of shott in skirmish to giue their volees: which 4. diuisions of vollee, by discharging, retiring, aduancing, and discharging, retiring and aduancing again and againe with continuall volees, doth giue more time and leisure to euerie formost diuision of harquebuziers with good aduisement to discharge their peeces, and to retire & recharge their peeces orderlie and verie well againe, then the diuisions of three dischargings or volees aforesaid, for lacke of

con-

conuenient time can do, as all men of any consideration may euidently see by the particularities by me before sett downe. But here it is to be noted that the 2. first little societies of 3. & of 4. soldiors deuided into three single discharginges, and the other of 4. harquebuziers into 4. single discharginges are to be accounted skirmishing and discharging of loose shott, whereas al the rest are to be accounted skirmishing in troupes.

And furder that all the aforesaid little societies and greater and smaller troupes of shot, are in their foresaid skirmishes to be ordered ouerseene and conducted by their Corporalles, and all the Corporalls by their higher officers; and all these different sorts of skirminishing in societies of loose shot, as also in troupes I haue particulerly set down because I haue known some Conductors of harquebuze shot, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, & of other Nations that haue vsed to skirmish by their soldiors giuing of their volles in three diuisions, and some other conductors of the same Nations that haue caused their harquebuziers to giue their volles in 4. diuisions in such sort as is before declared.

The skirmishing of loose shot in hubble-shusse.

But now besides all this, there is another kinde of skirmishing of loose shot, and that is when vnskilfull harquebuziers Nouices are lead out to skirmishe by as vnskilfull conductors, that those harquebuziers do neuer deuide themselves into chosen societies of threes, or foures, or any such numbers, nor into little troupes, as aforesaid, the one to take care of the other, and to giue time and leisure to discharge and recharge with order as aforesaid, but that they are lead in skirmishe by their officers in great troupes of 25. or 30. harquebuziers together or more, wheeling about & following one another so thick and so nere as they resemble a sport that I haue seene little boies play, hanging one vpon anothers long coate when there haue bene many of them together, called, *Why Puttocke away*, or else that euerie one of his owne head do go thick & threefold or dispersed to discharge at the enemie with all

allfurie, by which disorderlie and furious skirmishing, it commeth to passe that the harquebuziers doo discharge in haile without aduifement, to small or no hurt to the enemy, and therewithall by their discharging, charging, and recharging as fast as they can, they suddenlie heat their peeeces and make the vnprofitable, & oftentimes do by such disorderlie skirmishing, kil, or mischiefe one another: And besides, if any of them happen to be wounded or hurt because they haue not deuided themselues into chosen societies as aforesaid, none doo take care to succour and relieue such hurt & wounded souldiors, nor to draw away and saue their dead karkases according to the vse of all warlike Nations, with diuers other Inconueniences that I omit, which doo ensue vpon such disorderly skirmishing: And this kind of skirmishing may be very well tearmed to skirmish in hubbledeshuffe. But yet it is furder to be noted that in most skirmishes that are well performed in the open fieldes, although they do skirmish in such troupes of 3. or 4. diuisions of voles as aforesaid, yet such skirmishes are first begun by small societies of threes and of fowers, besides that it is alwaies conuenient that such troupes of shot should be backt with some numbers of light armed halbarders and piquers for such causes as heereafter shall be mentioned.

But because that in all matters militarie how well ordered at the first soeuer, there happeneth vpon diuers accidents disorder, either through the fault or lacke of skill of the conductors, or else through y negligence or lack of skill of the soldiors conducted: I wil now proceed to shew how the chiefe cōmanders & directers of such skirmishes should by brieue speeches redresse & reform al such disorders happened: as for example, If the chiefe leaders & directers of the skirmish, shal see the loose shot in their societies as aforesaid, or any of the troupes of shot before mentioned to skirmish too thick and neere together wherby they may indaunger one another, or receaue the greater annoiance from the shot of their Enemies, being more thinne and dispersed in their distāces: then he is to say vnto such societies or troupes,

S

*Inlarge*

Discommodities ensuing by this manner of skirmishing.



these spea-  
ches to be vsed  
when  
they are too  
thicke in skir-  
mish, by their  
leaders.

*Inlarge souldiors inlarge*, which being by the harquebuziers heard, they then should presentlie inlarge themselves more thinner, and into greater, but yet conuenient distances, as wel the societies of the loose shot of threes, and foures, as also such troupes of shot as are before mentioned, thereby to discharge with great order and dexteritie, seconding & supplying the one the others place, as also each one to succour the one the other in case of any wounds or hurts receiued according to the directions by me before very particulierlie set downe.

And if it happen as your souldiors are in skirmish or marching towardes, or entring into skirmish or retiring, that you doo perceiue and espie any ground or grounds of aduantage for your harquebuze or mosquet shot to worke any good effect against your enemies, either by ambush or otherwise as of hilles, bankes, trenches, caues, wooddes, shrubs, vines, or any other thing to encouer your shot, then you are to say to so many societies or troupes of your souldiors as you shall think meet for that effect; *To your aduantage souldiors to your aduantage*, and therewithall you must name the aduantage and strength that they should preuent the enemies of, be they bankes, hedges, trenches, hilles, or any other strength, which being by them heard, they must presently performe the same.

And in case that you beeing in skirmish doo see any reason of aduantage to drawe the loose shot of societies or troupes, or both, more on the one side, then on the other, that is more to the right hand then to the left; then you are to say vnto them, *Wing, Wing souldiors to the right*. And if to the left hand then you may say, *Wing, Wing souldiors to the left*. And if you see that the enemies haue spent their powder and heated their peeces, and that your aduantage is to approach them with more furie, then you are to say *Auance, Auance forward souldiors*. And in case your souldiors being in skirmish, you shall see your aduantage to reduce some of your loose shot into troupes of 6. of 9. of 12 or of 15. or more, be the numbers euen or odde it importeth

these speeches  
to be vsed to  
goe vpon any  
rounde or  
rounds of ad-  
uantage e-  
spied.

seuen other  
these speeches  
to be vsed vnto  
or for diuers  
purposes.

teth not, so as the particularities by me before set down be alwaies obserued, in such sort that the one troupe may fauour and flanke the other; then in passing amongst them you are to say to your Corporals and souldiors. *Troupe, troupe, and flanke souldiors.*

And if you find your souldiors ouerpressed with number of shot, or that your souldiors with long skirmish haue almost spent their powder or heated their peece, then you are to say. *Retire, retire, and frunt souldiors*, which beeing by them heard they must retire fil with their faces towards their Enemies, discharging their peecees not too fast, least that they should find themselves to their own mischiefe altogether without powder.

And incase that you haue piquers or halbarders to backe your shot (which you should neuer be without,) and that you see that your Enemies as also your owne soldiors by long skirmish haue spent much of their powder and heated their peecees, and that your shott with the shot of your enemies are readie to enter pellemelle, then you are to say to your piquers and halbarders: *Charge charge and execute soldiors*: which being by you pronounced they are to enter with all furie vpon their enemies, and with puissant hand to do execution vpon them. And here it is to be noted that harquebuzes of a yard long the Cannons at the most, well ranforced backward, & of a conuenient thinnesse forward, and the bullets of a conuenient Caliuier or heigth not too great, are a great deale more maniable, and therefore better for soldiors to vse in the field; then such heauie harquebuzes as we in these daies do miscall Caliuers, that are of great bullets, and the Cannons long and heauie with deformed stockes: which said harquebuzes ranforced of conuenient heueth & lightnes will wound or kill as well 50. or 60. paces off (which is distance enough) as any such heauie mistearmed Caliuers, & therewithall they do not so soone wearie the soldiors in handling and vsing them in seruices of the fieelde as such foresaid heauie peecees do, besides that they haue this commoditie that when in skirmish soldiors

The harquebuzes of a yard long the Cannon and ranforced backward, of as great and greater effectie then the heauy Caliuers that are nowadaies in vse.

do grow very neere together, and so sometimes pelle melle that they haue no more leifure to recharge their peeeces but that they are forced to betake themfelues to their swordes: they may then I say take their peeeces being of fuch conuenient heueth & lightneffe, in the midft with their left hands and drawing their swordes may beare a blow either at the head or legges, or beat by any thrust of sword, halbard, or pique, either with the vpper or lower part of their harquebuzes, and may therewithall at that instant enter and run in with the points of their swordes to the mifchiefe or endangering of their enemies, which cannot be performed with our fuch heauie miftearmed Caliuers, which moft commonlie vpon fuch accidents through the too much heueth of them are throwne awaie by the fouldiors that vfe them. Aduertifing further, that whenfoeuer your fouldiors bee in skirmifh with the enemy in the plaine and open fields, that your harquebuziers be alwaies instructed neuer to difcharge their peeeces nor giue any volce of fhott at their euemies aboue 20. 30. or 40. paces diftant, or 50. at the vttermoft: For it is to bee noted that to difcharge or giue any volce, or volees of fhott at the enemy in skirmifh any greater diftance then 50. paces, the fame dooth worke but very little effect; by reafon that fuch weapons of fire are in thofe actions fo vncerten, as all Captaines and fouldiors that are of experience in matters of Armes doo verie well knowe; although I haue diuers times heard fome talke and tell how they haue feene skirmifhes whereas the harquebuziers haue difcharged their peeeces at their enemies, 10. 12. or 14. skores of, which (confidering the verie fmall effect that fuch difcharginges and volees doo worke againft the enemy) is to be holden for a verie great skorne and error militarie, for fuch harquebuzes as doo vfe to skirmifh fo farre off, are more meet by al reafon and true experience to skare Crowes in a corne field, then to worke any good effect againft their enemies in the field.

But fmall effect  
wrought by  
harquebuzes  
in skirmifh  
aboue 50. paces  
off

A very skorne  
to giue volees  
of harque buze  
fhott at the enemy  
10. 12. or 14  
skores of.

*Briefe*



*Briefe speeches to be vsed by Captaines or leaders, of Harquebuziers when they would reduce them into a broad square with distances oblique.*

**I**F a Captaine or leader of harquebuziers would vpon any occasion or aduantage of ground reduce any number of harquebuziers into a broad square or hearse oblique of 7. rankes, with intent that they may haue the more conuenient distances for the discharging of their volees, then they are to say vnto them : *Oblique your selues harquebuziers 21. and 20. in rankes*, or any other numbers greater or fewer, so as the first ranke doo exceed the second ranke by the number of one, and the third, the fourth likewise by the number of one, and so consequently in the same sort to the last seuenth ranke which should be of equal number to the first : Then the harquebuziers presentlie are to reduce themselues into the forme oblique, all the harquebuziers of euerie second ranke being fewer in number then the greater ranke preceeding them by the number of one should place themselues oblique to the ranke before them, that is, they shoulde place euerie one of themselues with their faces directlie towards the voide places or distaunces of the greater ranke before them sauing that the last ranke as aforesaide, must be of equall number to the first ranke, to the intent that the same may bee a fourmed and proportioned hearse that is broad in frunt and narrowe by flanks.

What distance oblique doo means.

And all those harquebuziers beeing reduced into this forme oblique with conuenient and proportionate distances, may through those distances oblique giue gallant volees to the great mischiese of their enemies, without hurting or endamaging the one the other : And because that these distances oblique may seeme strange to such as neuer sawe horsemen or footemen reduced into that fourme : So it is that I haue manie times scene in Hongarie in the Warres of Emperour *MAXIMILIAN* against the

*Distance oblique  
lique alto-  
gether vſed by  
the harquebu-  
zes and light  
horſemen  
Hongarians  
and other ori-  
entall nations.*

*The Perſians  
only of all the  
orientall nati-  
ons doe vſe  
men at Armes,*

*Distances ob-  
lique in the  
field of great  
aduantage  
for all light  
horſemen.*

Turks, the harquebuziers, Hongarians called by the name of Heydukes march and ſerue in thoſe orders and diſtances oblique: And ſo in like manner the horſemen Hongarians being all light horſemen and called by the name of *Vſarons* although I haue ſeene them in the field in many and diuers orders and formes, yet their diſtances were moſt common-  
lie oblique; which order oblique is alſo vſed by the Turks, Tartars, and other ſuch orientall Nations: becauſe that all their horſemen are light horſemen and not men at Armes, ſauing that the *Perſians* onely of all the reſt of the orientall Nations doo vſe both men at armes with their horſes barbed, as alſo light horſemen. And this aforeſaid order oblique is of great aduantage for all light horſemen in the field, and chieſelie for ſuch as doo vſe to charge their ſpeares, as the Hongarians doo, in ſockets made faſt to their Saddles, or as our light horſemen borderers that doo charge their ſpeares vpon their thighs, as alſo for ſuch light horſemen Stradiots as will after the maner of the Moores, vſe double headed Launces, or zagayas by ſome called punching ſtaues for diuers cauſes and reaſons, that I am able by the helpe of Almighty God to ſhewe by effectually demonstrations in the field, Of the which ſome I did ſhew this laſt Summer 1588 in exerciſes of the field, vnto diuers Captaines and Gentlemen of the ſhire of Eſſex.

*Speaches to be vſed to a broad ſquare, or to any ordered troupe of harquebuziers being in a ſtraight or ground of aduantage, where horſmen cannot charge them.*

**W**Hen a good number of harquebuziers are reduced into a ſquare or troupe formed not in rankes oblique but by right line to flanke a breach or to make head againſt the enemy in ſome ſtraight or paſſage, or that the place is ſuch and of that ſtrength for the guard of the harquebuziers that it is more requiſit that they ſhould make reſiſtance againſt the enemy in ſome ſquare or troupe formed then any waies diſſeuered or in troupes conſuled,

confused, then the leaders vpon the approach of the enemy are to say vnto them *Discharge souldiers & to your knees,* and charge againe vlee after vlee: which beeing by them heard, the first and second ranke being in ranks of conuenient distances, are at one instant to giue a vlee as neere as they can, taking their sightes at point and blank, which being doone, they ought in an instant to fall vpon one of their knees and to charge againe while the third and fourth ranks doo likewise giue their vleees, which being by them performed, they ought in like manner to kneele downe and charge their peecees, giuing place to the fift, and sixt ranks to discharge their peecees ouer all their heads, which being performed throughout the whole hearse or troupe, sauing that the two hinder ranks shall not need to kneele bicause there are none behind them to shoot ouer their heads, then all the first ranks that haue charged their peecees againe are to stand vp & to giue vlee after vlee, and so to their knees againe, and to giue place to the hindermost ranks to discharge their peecees ouer their heads according to the former prescribed order: But to the intent that two ranks may the better giue a vlee both at one instant without daungering the one the other as aforesaid, it were requisit that eue-ry second ranke should be reduced oblique as aforesaid to the ranke preceeding, for otherwise there can but only one ranke discharge at a time vnlesse their ranks be very thin.

How harque-  
tuziers are to  
giue their vo-  
leees being re-  
duced into a  
square in some  
ground of ad-  
uantage.

*Briefe speeches to be vsed to Mosquetiers beeing in a broad square.*

**W**hen a conuenient company of mosquetiers well guarded with armed men are reduced into a broad square of 15. or 20. in frunt, and 6. by flankes, more or fewer, and that all their restes be fixed in the ground in conuenient distances, and that their conductors vpon the approach of the enemy would haue them to giue vlee after vlee from their rests, taking their certen sights from pointe at blanke, and that euerie ranke should orderlie succeed



Now mosquetiers are to discharge their peeces being reduced into a broade square

ceede the one the other in discharging their peeces; then they are to say vnto them, *Discharge, retire, and aduaunce*, which being by the mosquetiers heard, then the first whole ranke taking their sights at pointe and blanke are all at one time to discharge their peeces at the squadron or troupe of horsemen or footmen approching, which being by them performed they are presently to retire to the last ranke of rests there to charge againe, leauing their owne ranke of rests still fixed in the ground. Then the second ranke are to aduaunce themselves and to clappe their peeces vpon the first ranke of rests as they do stand directly before them, and the third ranke are to aduaunce themselves to the second ranke of rests, & the fourth ranke to the third ranke of rests and the fifth ranke to the fourth ranke of rests, and the sixte ranke to the fifth ranke of rests, whilest the first that hath discharged, and is now retired to the sixte or last ranke of rests do charge their peeces againe & so geuing continual volees of bullets by discharging, retiring, and aduauncing as aforesaid, they may annoie the enemy be they horsemen or footmen in terrible sorte without falling into any disorder or confusion. And the verie like speeches may be vsed to little squares or troupes of harquebuziers in the field when they are to retire hauing discharged, and other troupes to aduaunce and supply their places geuing them time to charge again, and so by retiring, aduauncing, and succeeding euerie one the other, they may giue continuall volees of shot at the enemies.

Mosquetiers are not to discharge their peeces at the enemy aboue 8. 9. 10. or 12. skores, at the furdest, 10. or 12. skores, & the furthest.

Aduertising and aduising all leaders of mosquetiers that will worke good effect and winne reputation with that kinde of weapon in the field, that they do not permitt their mosquetiers to discharge their peeces at their enemies aboue 8. 9. 10. or 12. skores, at the furdest, and therewithall to take their sightes at point and blanke from their rests and <sup>not</sup> without their rests. Also I would that some conuenient numbers of mosquetiers should be commanded to charge their peeces with conuenient charges of powder and with 5. pistoll bullets of a meane Caluer and height with some quantitie of soft browne paper or something

thing else, both betwixt the powder and haile shot of war, as also after the haile shot to restrain both powder and bullets, to the intent that the same may worke the more forcible and terrible effectes: And that the same mosquetiers should be commanded not to discharge their peeeces when their companies do discharge theirs with single bullets, but that they should reserue their shot vntill some squadron of footmen, or square, or troupe of horsemen should approach within 10. 15. or 20. paces to charge them. At which time I would haue them to giue their volee of haile shot of warre from their rests at their Enemies approaching within the aforesaid distances, and not any further, because they may be the more sure to hit either horsmen or footmen, which in greater distances they cannot so certenlie performe.

Mosquers charged with haile shot of warre within 10. 15. or 20. paces doe worke great effectes.

And heere it is to be furder noted, that such as doo talke of giuing volees of mosquet shot 30. 24. or 20. skores off, at squares or troupes of horsemen or footmen that are in march or in any motion of the field do greatlie erre, as men that neuer had any good experience of that weapon in actions of the field, vnlesse peraduenture it hath been to their owne mischiefe, incountring with olde bandes, Italians, Wallouns, or Spaniards, who were neuer so ill aduised as in vaine to giue their volees so great distances off, and therefore doo reserue their shot to discharge at the enemye not aboue 8. 9. or 10. skores off at the vttermost, although it bee at a whole square or troupe of horsemen or footmen, vnlesse it were out of some fortification, from whence they may discharge their peeeces with full bullets, and *De main puesto*, as the Spaniards call it.

It argueth but small experience in those that would haue mosquetiers in the field to giue their volees of shot 30. 24. or 20. skores off.

For although the mosquet ranforced and well charged with good powder would carrie a bullet point and blanke 24. or 30. scores: doth it therefore follow that they should giue Volees of mosquet shotte 24. or 20. skores off, when that in failing to take their iuste point and blanke no more but the length of a Corne, their bullettes doo worke as much effect at the starres, as against the enemye that they shoot at; Besides that in so great a distance of

Why mosquetiers are not in the field to giue their volees of shotte 20. 24. or 30. scores off.

T

ground,

ground, how truly soeuer they take their sights at point and blanke, the aire dooth worke verie great effect, with their bullets that are lower by 4. or 5. bores then the heighth of their peeeces, to carrie them by mounting, or otherwise from the marke or markes that they are shot at.

*Certen Orders, airections, and brieft speeches to be obserued by a Sergeant Maior, and Captaines, and leaders of Archers in the field.*

**A**Ll the most notable and excellent kinges and their great captaines of our English nation in times past, (who as it is most manifest by many notable histories both auncient and moderne) were not any wayes inferior in knowledge and skill in the Arte and science military to the greatest kinges and captaines of our age deceased; but did also farre exceed and excell all the Princes and Captaines of this obscure time of Ignorance in christendome now liuing, in all proceedings and actions militarie, (as it is most apparant by the many battles & great victories by them in diuers ages, and against many warlike nations obtained) did (contrarie to the vaine and friuolous opinions of our newe English men of warre of this time) so greatly esteeme of our archers, through the continuall and great experience they had of their woderful & miraculous effects in all battles and great incountries; that vpon the composing & forming of any Armie, the same being deuided into fise partes, alwaies three partes of the fise did consist of archers: And because archers in all actions militarie were so continually & greatly employed, they vsed to reduce them into the most conuenient orders and formes that they could deuise for them with their arrows to work their greatest effects, against both horsemen and footmen their Enemies; which was into the forme of hearfes, which hearfes were broad in frunt, and narrow <sup>and</sup> short by flankes, which is to be vnderstood, of many soldiours in euery ranke; and but of fewe rankes by flankes; in such sorte, as what numbers

The account  
made of ar-  
chers in times  
past.

The auncient  
forme of redu-  
cing of archers  
were into hear-  
fes.



bers soeuer of archers they placed in frunte, that is in euery ranke, the archers by flanke, did neuer exceed the number of 7. or 8. rankes at the most; And the causes and reasons were these: that the archers being reduced into their hearse or hearfes, as also into their conuenient distaunces in frunt and by flankes, euery one of them without any trouble through the too much nearenes of their fellows in the same ranke, or by the ouermuch nearenes of the ranke & ranks before them, might, without any impediment shoot and roue of any mean height at their enemies being either horsemen or footmen, ouer the heads of the rank or ranks before them; and therewithall that the hindermost ranks, (being so few by flankes as aforesaid) might the more easily see their Enemies that they shoot at: As also that by the fewnesse of their rankes, the hindermost ranke and ranks being the nearer to their Enemies, should the more easilie reach their Enemies with their volces of arrowes; whereas otherwise if the rankes were many, then by the ouerplurality of rankes the hinder rankes should be depriued of the sight of their Enemies that they should shoot at, and also should be driuen to shoot their arrows at their enemies too high a compasse, and by such meanes worke the lesse effect against their enemies.

All which considered, I thought good in this place to shew how any number of archers should be reduced into the forme of a hearse, or diuers hearfes, which is a thing of great facilitie to be performed, because that the Captaine or Captaines of archers haue no more to do but to say vnto their archers. *Ranke your selues archers .7. in a ranke* or if they will make a hearse of 8. rankes, *then ranke your selues 8 in a ranke*, (as in the first part of this my booke concerning the reducing of single bandes into rankes, is verie particularly contained); which being by the archers performed throughout the whole band, or as manie bands of archers as they will bring into a hearse; then their Captaines and conductors are to lead them by the flanke and corner of the Squadron where those archers shall be reduced into winges;

How to reduce  
archers into  
Hearfes.

and there drawing those archers as far out, and large from the corner of the Squadron as they shal think requisite; and finding the hindermost ranke of 7. souldiors, or of 8. if they be disposed to make their flanke of 8. archers, to be of such convenient distance from the corner of the Squadron as they shal think meet: then the chiefe Commander of those Archers is presentlie to goe to the midst of that flanke where they are to make of flanke frunt, and then being a convenient distance from them, he ought to say vnto them: *Frunt to mee Archers, and let this worde passe throughout from flanke to flanke*: Vppon which his wordes pronounced, all the souldiors in flanke throughout next vnto him are presentlie to turne their faces and weapons towardes him and make of flanke frunt, and so subsequentlie all the rest of the archers throughout al the rankes must performe the like. And this making of flank frunt may be performed aswel by the stroke of the drumme as by the brieue speeches of the commander: which being by them performed, then they must presently reforme themselues into their convenient distances both by frunt and flanks, that thereby they may without any impediment giue their volces as aforesaid: And thus of a great number of ranks that they were before when they marched in their simple or single order of rankes, as of 7. or else of 8. in a ranke from frunt to backe, they are now become a great number of Archers in frunt; that is, in euerie ranke, and but onelie of 7. or else 8 ranks by flanks, which order and forme is to be vnderstood and tearmed a hearse of Archers; and as this hearse is now reduced into a wing either from the right or left corners of the Squadron: so may the like winges be drawen from all 4. corners, as also vpon the frunt or flanks of the Squadron, or any other place or places where it shal please the General of the field, or the Lord Marshall to direct or command.

But heere it is to be further noted, that such hearstes are not to giue any volces of arrowes at their Enemies, but onlie vppon a token or signe giuen vnto them by some chiefe Commaunder of the hearse, who by his officers is to make  
all

Archers reduced into hear-  
ses, are neuer  
to giue their  
volces but vpon  
a signe gi-  
uen

all the fouldiors of the hearſe priuie to the ſame ſigne and token; And therefore the ſame Commaunder and ſigne giuer is to be of good vnderſtanding in archerie: as alſo of the diſtances of groundes, that thereby he may not faile to giue his ſigne when the hindermoſt archers are within the reach of the former ranks of the enemies bee they horſemen or footmen: for if hee ſhould faile in the ſame, whereby the Archers through the too great diſtance of ground ſhoulde ſhoot ſhort, hee ſhould then commit a very groſe error.

Alſo it is to bee noted that if the commander of the archers doo thinke it requiſite, he may deuide the deliuerie of his archers arrowes into two volees, that is, that hee may if the hearſe doo conſiſt of 8. ranks by flanks take order that ſower of the formoſt ranks ſhal giue their firſt volees, and as the enemies doo approach neerer to giue order that the other 4. hindermoſt ranks ſhall likewiſe giue their volees altogether with the ranks before them. And as the reducing of Archers into theſe aforeſaide formes of hearſes are verie conuenient and of great effect for battles: euen ſo they may bee brought into diuers other formes according to the ſcituation of the ground or groundes and diuers other occasions, and likewiſe worke verie great effectes.

But now, whereas there be diuers in this time profeſſing Armes, that doo greatly diſeſteeme archers, thinking that a farre greater number of Archers were not able to encounter with a ſmaller number of moſquetiers: Thereunto I ſay that that their opinion doth proceede of nothing elſe, but of their lacke of vnderſtanding and knowing the wonderfull imperfections and failings that do belong to muſquets and moſquetiers in the field, as alſo of the ſtrange and incredible effects of archers arrowes, and therewithall that they did neuer enter into the conſideration that moſquetiers are not to worke any effect in the open fieldes but from their reſtes fixed in the ground, or ſome other accidentall or naturall reſts and themſelues ſtanding ſtill to take ſome

An aunſwer to ſuch as doe thinke archers inferior to moſquetiers in the plaine field.



fight from point at blanke, at their enemies when they discharge, which at men in motion with any certentie it is not possible for them to performe, and if they faile in taking their sightes at point and blanke, then their bullets do flie straight at the Cloudes without doing any other hurt; besides that when they haue once discharged their first charges of full bullets, or haile shot of warre from their rests in case they be forced vpon the vncerten coming of the Enemy to remoue and new place their rests and charge againe, their peeces are so exceeding heauie, and they therewithall so troubled with their rests hanging vpon their fingers, that they are driuen to a verie long recharging of their mosquets againe, which recharging if it be not in such particuler sort and perfection, as I haue before set downe, the bullets of their second volee will scarce go within the compasse of the height of piques vprighted, or rather of younge trees, as all skilfull soldiours that do know their wonderfull vncerten effects in seruices of the field will confesse: so as I com to conclude, if the trial were to be made in the open & plaine fields betwixt 1500. archers, and 3000. mosquetiers without any other weapon of succor either for the one side or for y other, y mosquetiers being reduced into any formes of greatest aduantage and conueniencie for mosquetiers y can be deuised, those 1500. archers being reduced into many & many troupes of fiftenees, of twenties, of foue & twenties, of thirties & more or fewer, and they approching & assailing the mosquetiers both in frunt and by flanks, & giuing their volees of arrowes in continuall motions at the mosquetiers, who if they meane to worke any effect of necessitie must stand still to discharge their peeces as aforesaid during which time of their standing still they shall to their great error and mischiefe receaue the continuall volees of the archers arrowes, vpon all parts of their bodies, in such sort as the archers there is no doubt, being well instructed and led in their troupes by their Captaines and other officers, would with great facilitie with a verie few volees of arrowes breake all the mosquetiers, although they were of  
a farre

1500. archers  
able to breake  
3000 mosque-  
ters

The aduantage that archers haue of mosquetiers.

a farre greater number: For although mosquets will carrie their bullets point and blanke a great deale further distance then archers are able to work any effect with their arrowes; yet their wonderfull vncertenties (many of the particularities whereof I haue in other my bookes very particulerlie set downe) are such and so manie, as against archers reduced into great numbers of troupes as aforesaid, and assailing them in motion with infinite volees of arrowes, they would be found to be of a wonderful, & incredible small resistance against the blowes of such innumerable arrowes as aforesaid.

Howbeit peradventure some professing armes will saie, that harquebuziers may with a great deale more aduantage encounter with Archers then mosquetiers, because that harquebuziers may incounter with Archers deuided into great numbers of societies and troupes, and therewithall may giue their volees of bullets in motion at the archers, aswell as the archers their volees of arrowes in motion at them. Wherevnto I answer, that if the volees of mosquetiers bullets from their rests be so vncerten at men in motion as I haue before mentioned, then of necessitie the volees of harquebuziers, themselves discharging in motion, at the archers likewise in motion must needs be a great deale more vncerten: besides that if harquebuziers do discharge 9. 10. 11. or 12. skores distant at the archers, as the archers may doo at them, it will bee found that in 10000. of their shot they will not hit so many as 10. archers: so wonderful vncerten by all true experience of all wel practised and skillfull souldiors are those weapons of fire. So as I come to conclude also that a farre greater number of harquebuziers are no waies able to abide the terror of a much smaller number of archers, I meane if the archers bee of a thousand or any greater number, whereby they may reduce themselves into many formes and troupes.

Their oppinion that thinke harquebuziers of greater aduantage to encounter with archers then mosquetiers refused.

The aduantages y archers haue of harquebuziers.

And now as I haue alledged diuers reasons to shew and proue that a smaller number of archers reduced into many greater and smaller troupes, haue great aduantage to ouer-

Reasons to  
proue that 500.  
harquebuziers  
are in skirmish  
able to ouer-  
throw as many  
mosquetiers.

uerthrow and breake a great deale greater number of mosquetiers in the plaine & open fields: euen so am I perswaded by the like causes and reasons that 500. harquebuziers in the plaine and open fields reducing themselves into many societies of loose shot, as also into greater troupes (as I haue before in other places, whereas I haue shewed in what sort harquebuziers should skirmish declared) were able with great facilitie to ouerthrow and driue out of the fieldes. 500 mosquetiers; I meane, if neither the harquebuziers nor the mosquetiers had any other weapon to succor them but themselves, by reason that the harquebuziers being dispersed into many societies of loose shot, and into greater and lesser troupes, may trauesse their grounds and inlarge themselves, and giue their vooles in continuall motion, sauing only at the instant when they take their sights and discharge their peeces at the frunt, flankes and backe of the mosquetiers standing still like buttes without motion: at their rests whereas mosquetiers reducing themselves into diuers broad squares, or troupes according vnto their most conuenient orders of aduauntage to discharge their peeces from their rests, cannot discharge their peeces although with haile shot of warre at the harquebuziers to any effect, by reason that they are dispersed, and in continuall motion. Howbeit if any man will saie that mosquetiers might without their rests likewise reduce themselves into many little societies, and greater and smaller troupes, and so with great aduauntage in respect that their peeces wil carrie point and blanke a great deale surder, then harquebuzes, skirmish with the harquebuziers: Thereunto it is to be aunswered, that it is not possible that mosquetiers, although they were all men of great force and strength, should be able with their forehandes to support and beare their so heauie peeces to discharge, and shoote with any steadines or certentie: Considering that for any man to discharge any peece either harquebuze, Currier, or mosquet without a rest effectually it doth behouue him to haue his peece of such lightnesse, as he may be Maister of his peece, and not his peece through  
the

Mosquetiers  
are not able in  
skirmish to vse  
their peeces  
without rests  
to any effect, &  
with rests  
they cannot  
skirmish.



the great heueth thereof maister of him; that is, that hee may with dexterity discharge it steadily and with ease from his forehead, taking his sight either from point at blanke, or at least from the end of his peece with some kind of certentie: which if his peece be any thing too heauie for him with facilitie & ease to mannage, it is not possible for him to performe, although it were at a firme and steadie marke, by reason that he struiuing with all his force to beare the end of his peece, to discharge the same with some steadinesse and certentie, the same ouermaistring his forces with extreame heueth, doth make him to shoot iust either at the centre of the earth, or else at the seuen stars without dooing any hurt to the enemy: Besides that when he hath once or twise discharged to recharge againe, it dooth not onlie through the great length and heueth of his peece require a much longer time then for a harquebuzier to recharge his harquebuzer, but also doth so weary the mosquetier, that it doth be- reauie him of his forces, in such sort as he is to work in a manner no effect, other then by his seldom discharging to make a great noise. So as in this matter I come to conclude, that as mosquetiers (as I haue in certain other places before mentioned) through the great distance that their peeces wil carie, and the great blowes that they will giue as wel with hail-shot of war as with single bullets, haue in their conuenient and due times and places great aduantage against harquebuziers: Euen so for skirmishes, harquebuziers for the causes and reasons before alledged, do in their effects farre exceed and excel mosquetiers. And thus farre concerning these matters before handled. All Captaines both of horsemen and footemenne and their officers shoulde instruct and teach their bandes that when they are reduced into their simple or single order, or into any forme of squadron, or into any other form; that when any brieue speeches or words are spoken either by y<sup>e</sup> coronel or sergeant Maior, or by their Captains, to y<sup>e</sup> intent that the same should passe from the hindermost rank to the formost rank, or from the formost to the hindermost, or from flank to flank: y<sup>e</sup> then

For any man to discharge his peece effectually, it becometh him to be maister of his peece and not his peece maister of him.

Instructions to be giuen by Captaines and officers to their bands for the passing of any brieue speeches or words.

To whome the  
commaunde-  
ment of passing  
of brieve spea-  
ches doth ap-  
pertaine.

The ductie of  
trompettors  
& drummers.

The care that  
all Captains &  
officers of  
bandes are to  
haue to instruct  
their bandes.

they do in no wise faile with all celerity to passe that speech or worde without stop or stay vppon seuerer punishment of euerie ranke that shall be found not to passe the same, euen to the verie first or last ranke, and so likewise from flanke to flanke. And the commandement of the passing of those brieue speeches or wordes in bandes single doo appertaine to the Captaine, his Lieutenant or Sergeants; and if it be in diuers bandes reduced into forms either to march or fight, then those commandements of brieue speeches or wordes doo appertaine chieflie to the coronell or Sergeant Maior, or to his deputie Lieutenant, and not to any Captaine or Captains, or their officers, without the speciall commandement of one of the three aforesaid officers.

All drummers should bee very skilfull and perfect in all the different strokes that are to direct and command all captaines and their souldiors be they either in Campe, field or Towne. All trompettors also, as well such as doo belong to bands of horsemen, as others that doo belong to Coronels of footmen should be very skilfull and perfect to blow and sound all kinde of soundes, directions, & commandments. And the Lord Lieutenant generals sergeant trompettor, or trompettor Maior, as also his Sergeant drummer, or drummer Maior, should haue a speciall care to see that all trompettors, and drummers vnder them throughout the whole Campe should strike, and sound all diuersities and kindes of soundes and strokes with one conformitie, in such sort that all Captaines and their officers & souldiors may at all times and vppon all occasions vnderstand distinctlie by all those their diuersities of soundes and strokes what they should performe without any waies mistaking them.

Also all Captaines and officers of bandes as well of horsemen as of footmen should be verie carefull to instruct their souldiors to learne and know what euery different sound of trompet or stroke of drumme dooth signifie, and howe to performe the directions of those trompets or drummes: as for example, when horsemen or footmen should reduce themselves into their simple or single order of ranks, and when

when one or diuers bandes should reduce themselues into Squadron, and how when they being reduced into Squadron should make of backe, or of flankes frunt, when also to march faster or more leifurelie, and when to march a trot without disordering their rankes, when to staie and make a stand, when to retire, and when to aduance, when also to straighten and close their rankes by frunt and flankes, with all other diuersities of soundes and strokes, that are in the skill and science of trompettors and drummers to direct with their trompets and drums. And as they are to learne and know when by the sound of the trompet, or stroke of the drum to performe those and other actions militarie, so ought they to be instructed and taught by their Captaines and officers by often exercises how to performe all those and other matters militarie with great order as well euerie souldior in particular as all souldiors in generall. And thus all bands both of horsemen and footmen being instructed and taught by their Captaines and officers to vnderstand the different significations of all strokes and soundes of trompets and drummes, as also all such brieft speeches, as I haue before set downe in this booke, and how effectiualle to performe them, may in mine opinion be very well accounted not only soldiors, but old souldiors, in most seruices of the Campe or field.

*Certen Instructions and obseruations concerning the ordering and exercising of men at Armes, of dimilaunces, & also of light horsemen, stradiots incorporated with Archers and crosbowers on horsebacke, for diuers purposes & seruices.*

**F**irst, when any Coronell or Captaine or Captains will reduce their bandes be they of men at Armes, or of dimilaunces, or Stradiots, or of any other sort of light horsemen into their simple or single order of 4. 5. or 6. or more or fewer in a ranke, I would wish that they should instruct their horsemen that vpon the sound of the trompet for that purpose, or vpon hearing such words pronounced by their Captaines or officers, as I haue very particularlie

To reduce men at armes or dimilaunces into their simple or single order of rankes.



ticularlie set downe aswell for horsemen as footmen in the beginning of this booke, that they should presentlie reduce themselves into ranks by the left flankes the one of the other, and that therewithall they should haue regard to their distances, and to all other such considerations as are there mentioned concerning these and diuers other purposes.

Squadrons of  
men at armes  
how many so-  
euer they be in  
frunt ought not  
to be aboute 10.  
or 12. by flankes.

Now to reduce men at Armes or dimitaunces into squadron, I think it is more then needeth againe to particularly fame; considering that any numbers of such horsmen are to bee reduced into their squadron or squadrons in one of the same sorts that piquers footmen are; and that with a greater facilitie; because that squadrons of men at armes, how many soeuer they bee in frunt ought not in mine opinion (although I haue seene otherwise) to bee aboute 10. or 12. at the most by flankes; because all the ranks that should bee about that number might be holden for superfluous and vnprofitable; by reason that if another squadron of men at Armes that were but of the like number by frunt; and were by flankes 24. or 30. ranks or more, would vpon that opinion of the pluralitie of the ranks conceiued without taking any other aduantage, charge such a squadron as aforesaid, that were of like number vnto them in frunt, and by flankes onelie 10. ranks, they should finde that squadron but of 10. ranks aswell able to encounter with them, and to abide their charge, as they theirs; because they should not be able with their charge to passe those 10. ranks, no more, then the squadron of 10. ranks to passe through their multiplicitie of ranks; which is the cause that I would make my squadron of men at Armes or Launces broad in frunt according to the number, and by flankes not aboute 7. or 8. or 9. or 10. or 11. or 12. ranks at the most,

Howbeit, true it is that such squadrons of Launces as do consist of 20. 25. or 30. ranks may draw forth from the backe or rereward a sleeue of 5. or of 10. ranks of Launces, and draw them vppe by one of the flankes of the same squadron. and make the frunt of their squadron broader by frunt and shorter by flankes; and may also vpon some other aduantage

uantage espied with those ranks drawne out from behind, charge the contrarie squadron in flanke; or vpon other occasions otherwise employ them, which is the greatest aduantage that such squadrons of men at Armes or dimilaunces of manie ranks haue.

Also it is to be noted that it is a greater aduantage for such as are Coronels, commaunders, or orderers of horsemen to reduce 500. Launces into 2. 3. 4. or 5. squadrons to charge either horsemen or footemen, then to reduce 500. Launces all into one body of squadron; by reason that they being in so many squadrons may at one time bee employed in diuers seruices. Also if it were to charge a squadron of 500. Launces; 3. of the 5. of those little squadrons may make themselues all of one frunt: but I meane euerie squadron by himselfe separated a good distance one from another, and in that forme may receiue or giue a charge all at one instant vpon the broad frunt of the 500. Launces whilst that the other two squadrons that are in wings of those three, espying their aduantages immediatlie vpon y charge giuen and receiued, may likewise almost at the same instant giue their charge vpon the flanks, backe, or hinder corners of the great squadron to the disordering of them: euen so likewise 500. Launces reduced into 5. squadrons of 100 to euery squadron may with greater aduantage charge a squadron of piques, then if the whole 500. were reduced but into one bodie of squadron, by reason that 3. of the 5. squadrons of 100. to euery squadron reduced into 5. ranks 20 in euery ranke, charging the frunt & corners of y squadron of piquers at one time, and the other 2. squadrons of 100. a peece being each one of them reduced into 4. ranks of 25. in euery rank to the intent to beare the greater breadth, or into 5. ranks of 20. in euery ranke as the other 3. were, may immediatlie vpon the Retraite of those 3. Squadrons, giue a newe Charge vpon the frunt and corner of the Squadron of piquers, to the indaungering of the disordering and breaking of the saide Squadron:

Why 500. Launces are rather to be reduced into 3. 4. or 5. little squadrons, then into one entier squadron.

whereas, if the whole number of 500. Launces were reduced into .100. rankes. 5. in a ranke, or into .8 rankes that is 62. in a ranke, ouerplus 4: or into .10. rankes that is .50. in euerie ranke, or more or fewer, I say (that in mine opinion) one charge of the Squadron of 500. launces should not be able to worke so great an effect to the endaungering of the Squadron of piquers as those 5. little squadrons or hundreds should be able to doo, seconding one another and charging at different times, and thereby the two last squadrons finding the Squadron of piques in some disorder through the charge of the .3. first squadrons should with great facilitie giue in amongst them & ouerthrow them, or at least, put them in great hazard of breking & ouerthrowing. And so likewise 500. launces or stradiots or any greater number haue a great deale greater aduauntage to charge, disorder & break in the open fields any number or numbers of harquebuziers or molquetiers, incase they be without any succor of piques or aduauntage of ground in troupes of hundreds and fifties, or many other smaller troupes, then if they were reduced into any .2. or .3. great bodies of Squadron or troupes.

But yet because I haue said before that a Squadron of Launces of 10. or 12. rankes are to be reduced into forme with a great deale greater facility then a Squadron of footmen that doth consist of many rankes and peraduenture of diuersitie of weapons, and that all Captaines that do leade Launces do not well knowe how to forme such a Squadron, although but of a few rankes as aforesaid; I will therefore here briefly set downe how they shall presently reduce such a Squadron of few, or of many rankes into forme with great facilitie; and that is by any one of two waies, the first to reduce them by flanke or flankes, & the other by right line.

Two waies  
whereby to re-  
duce a squa-  
dron of launces  
of fewe or ma-  
ny rankes into  
forme.

As for example, the Captaine or Captaines of such a band or bands of men at Armes or dimilaunces, commanding their officers to reduce their band or bandes into their simple or single order of 6. Launces in a rank throughout,  
and



and then considering the one halfe of the full number of the rankes, they are vpon the sounde of the Trompette, or else by brieve speaches pronounced, to commaund the formost one halfe of the launces to marche some 20. or 30. paces, and the other halfe of the launces to stay and kepe their ground, which marching forward of 20. or 30. paces by the first halfe to giue conuenient ground and place to the other halfe to reduce themselves into squadron by flanke being performed, and they there in their rankes making a stay and pause, then some captain or captains or other leaders for that purpose appointed, placing themselves vpon the frunt of the hinder halfe of the launces that haue not yet moued, they vpon the sounde of the trompet are to march vp either by the right or left flanke of the formost halfe of the launces now making their pause and standing still, vntill that the formost ranke of the hinder halfe of launces doe make equall frunte with the formost ranke of the formost halfe of launces, and so likewise that the hindermost ranke of the same one halfe of launces, bee equall with the hindermost ranke of the formost one halfe of the launces, and so consequently all the rest of the ranks be euen and straight by flankes one with another: which being performed then of 6. in a rank that the same band or bandes of launces were before throughout, they are now come to be 12. in a rank throughout; which being done, then to make them a broad square of many in frunte, that is in euery ranke, and but only of 12. rankes, the captain, or captains that doe lead them, are to lead and draw the flanke of their band or bandes to the ground whereas they will make off flanke frunt: where being come, they are to make a stay and pause, and then either by the sound of the trompet vpon that flanke that shall be made frunt, or else vpon some of the captains galloping to the midst of the same flanke, and being something distant from the flanke; and pronouncing with a loud voyce. *Frunt vnto me men at Armes; or frunt vnto me Launces*: then presently all the horsemen that are nexte vnto them are to tourne their horses  
faces

faces and make frunt that waies, and so subsequently al the rest of the ranks of the launces one after another, which being performed, then of how many rankes soeuer they were before by flankes, now they are becomene to be only of 12. rankes by flankes, and in frunt, of the like number that they were by flanke, or flanks: And as the first forming of this Squadron was performed by doubling of the hinder halfe of the Launces by the flanke of the formost halfe of the Launces (as aforesaid:) Euen so may the Captaines either by the sound of the trompette, or by brief speeches commaund their Launces to double themselues by right line; that is, that the second ranke of 6. should enter into y<sup>e</sup> formost rank likewise of 6. and that the fourth ranke should enter into the third ranke; and so consequentlie euerie second ranke throughout to the verie backe or Rereward, to enter into the ranke before him, in such sort that of 6. that euery ranke was before, they are now by this doubling by right line become. 12. in euerie ranke from frunt to backe: which being performed and all the ranks reformed in their distances as well by frunt as flankes, then the Captaine or Captaines may presentlie make of flanke frunt according as I haue before verie particulerlie declared; and then the standard or Ensigne, or Ensignes if they be men at Armes, or the *Guidons* if they be dimilaunces being placed in the midst of the same Squadron, the whole broade square is readie to straighten and close their rankes by frunt and flankes, and either to charge their enemies or to receaue a charge. And as this broad square of many Launces in frunt, and but of 12. Launces by flankes hath bene reduced into forme by two different waies as aforesaid; so may any other Squadron or squadrons of launces be reduced by any of those two waies, of how many rankes by flankes soeuer they are. But yet as the reducing of horsemen by right line is verie good and ready: so the reducing of them into Squadron by flankes as aforesaid, is better; because they do no waies alter nor disorder themselues in their distances neither in frunt nor by flankes; whereas otherwise by entring and doubling their  
rankes

Wher the standard of men at armes or the guydon of dimilaunces is to be placed.

rankes one into another by right line, they come to disorder their proportionate distaunces, which they must again with all speed reforme. Aduertising further, that as this Squadron hath beene formed by the aforesaid two waies, so may the same or any other euen at the first be as well reduced by any of those 2. waies into form, in vaungard and frunt, without making of flank frunt, so as the Coronell, Sergeant Major, or Captain, that hath the forming of the said Squadron, haue good regard aswel to the ground and number that he wil make his frunt of, as to the number of y ranks by flanks, and therewithal to place and accomodat the broken rank, or ranks if there be any with the standard, ensigne, or Guidon.

Now because in these daies new opinions and fancies in matters of armes grounded vpon very weake or rather no reasons at all, do beare a very great swaie; and that amongst other errors militarie there be some that doo hold & allow that launces should be rather reduced into troupe to charge or receiue a charge, then into Squadron formed: I for diuers reasons, of the which some I will after alledge, would that when any Coronell or Captaines of men at armes or dimilaunces shal haue occasion to reduce their bands into form, either to march or fight; that then they doo in any wise reduce them into forme of Squadron, according to the ancient vse, and not into troupe according to the newe fancies, in case that time and leisure wil serue: And therewithall that they do form them with a triple frunt, that is three times as many in frunt as by flanks, and somtimes more: As for example, if the frunt be of 24. or 25. Launces, then the flanke should be of 8. launces: And somtimes also with a quatriple frunt, that is 4. times more in frunt, then by flanks; as also at other times and vpon other occasions into farre broader frunts then quadruple, although by flanks not aboue 10. or 12. rankes at the most as aforesaide: and that the Standards or Ensignes, if they bee men at Armes; or the Guidons if they bee dimilaunces bee placed in the midst of the Squadron.

Launces are alwaies rather to be reduced into Squadron, then into troupes.

Launces are alwaies to bee 3. times and somtimes 4. or 5. times or more in frunt than by flanks.

And y those horsmen be instructed how to inlarge themselves



selues in their ranks when they march in Squadron : and how presentlie vpon the sight of the enemye approaching to straighten themselves by frunt and flanks ; with their iust & proportionate distances, in such sort as they may charge or receiue a charge of the enemye without disordering their horses or Launces, or confounding their ranks: But in case that vpon a sudden Alarm giuen vpon the approach of the Enemye the Launces being in Campe, Towne, or Village be not reduced into their single order vnder their Ensignes or Guidons, but that they are then assembling themselves and the enemye neere at hand ; then they must make of necessitie vertue, that is to reduce themselves into troupe, making as neere as they can a triple, or quatriple frunt, or more that they may somewhat resemble a Squadron, hauing regard to their distances, that they may vse their Launces without disordering the one the other as neere as they may.

And whereas there be some professing armes in this time that doo holde an opinion that Launces haue a greater aduantage to charge or receiue a charge in troupe, then in Squadron as aforesaid ; they therein doo shew that for lacke of vnderstanding and consideration they doo greatlie erre in the ordering of horsemen Launces. For the Almaines, Italians, English, and diuers other Nations haue of great antiquitie vsed, both Squadron of men at Armes and dimilaunces, and also troupes : But it was neuer heard of before these disordered ciuill wars of France, and the Lowcountries, that Launces in troupes confused, should be preferred and iudged to be of greater aduantage then launces in Squadron formed, considering that the reducing of Launces into troupe dooth amongst men of war proceed of nothing else but of lacke of time to reduce them into Squadron vpon some sudden Alarme and approach of the Enemye : So as such as doo hold that opinion might aswell say that two, or three thousand piquers, and short weapons haue more aduantage to fight in a battle of necessitie, then in a Squadron formed : which battle of necessitie or extremitie, terme it

whereupon the  
reducing of  
launces into  
troupe doth a-  
mongst men of  
warre proceed.

A battle of neces-  
sitie is a nom-  
ber of piquers  
or horsemen  
launces out of  
ranks in troupe.

as you list, is neuer vsed but vpon some great and sudden accident as when a puissant enimie dooth make a sudden approach vpon your Campe most commonlie by night, or at the breake of day with a Canuesada, killing both scoutes, Centinels and watches, through their negligent watching, or discouering, and therevpon an alarme giuen, for lacke of time to reduce your piquers into Squadron formed, you are faine in the place of assemblie to make them to runne together into rankes confused, closing themselues as close as they can to defende the Ring, or entrie of the Campe. By the which comparisons, reasons, and examples of footmen piquers before alledged, such new fancies and lacke of vnderstanding in the ordering, or rather disordering of launces may be easilie discerned by men of reason and iudgement.

And now to the intent that your men at Armes or dimilances may be the better able to charge or receiue a charge of their enemies, it is verie meete, and conuenient that their Captaines and officers should reduce them some time into Squadron with a triple, or quatriple frunt.

And being so reduced, that they should be taught, how to straighten and close themselues in frunt and flankes; and how presently vpon the sound of a charge they should almost all at one instant put spurres to their horses galloping vpon the hand about 8. or 10. paces, and then charge their Launces from their tassels or long Cuisses and thighes presentlie into their restes, and not to carrie their Launces at the Armes ende, as they do commonlie vse at Tilt, to make the fairer shew; and then imagining the squadron of the enemies Launces to be within 15. or 20 paces directly before them, they should altogither put their horses into their Carrires to the intent to giue the greater blowe and shocke to the ouerthrowing or breaking of their enemies. Then I would wish them to be taught how they should receiue a charge if another squadron of launces should charge them: and that they should doo in this sort.

How and in what distances men at Armes or dimilaunces are to charge or receiue a charge of their enemies.

First when they shall see the squadron of their enemies

X.2.

comming

comming to charge them either galloping vpon the hand, or in their full Carrire; then they being straightned & closed in their ranks by frunt and flankes should stand firme, all the Launces of the three formost ranks ready charged in their restes, but yet the pointes of their launces something high, vntil they do see the enemies squadron within 15. or 20. paces of them: at which time they should with a terrible shout altogither in an instant, as if they were one entire bodie, put spurres to their horses, and fall into their Carrire, and so charge and shock with their enemies, to the disordering or breaking of them.

All which being by them performed, they should then stop their horses and discharge their launces, setting them againe vpon their thighes: And then they should be instructed how with al celeritie to make of flank frunt, by turning al their horses faces that waie, and by inlarging themselves and doubling, and redoubling their ranks to reduce their squadron againe into a triple, or quatriple frunt. Then I would wish that all the squadron of Launces should disorder themselves pelle melle out of their ranks: and that they should be instructed either vpon the sound of the Trompet or vpon the pronouncing of these wordes, *Troupe, troupe Launces*, presentlie to fall into troupe, making their frunt, triple, or quatriple, or more in respect of the flankes, as neere as their Captaines or officers can guesse; And being thus fallen into troupe, they should be taught how to charge or receiue a charge of their Enemies, without disordering themselves or their launces.

Then I would haue them againe reduced out of troupe into squadron, and taught how they should charge y flank or corner of a squadron of piques, and how in case they doe not disorder, nor breake the piquers, that they should retire againe; and then falling into troupe they should with a terrible shout offer a false charge by making a point & casting about when they come within 10. or 15. paces of the squadron of piques, in case that the piquers making head with their piques doo not disorder themselves: But if they should

Diuers exercises for horlmen to be instructed and taught in.



should perceiue the Squadron of piquers to wane or swaie (as commonly they do a little before they break) that then they should giue in vpon the piquers with a full charge, to the vtter ouerthrowing of them. And thus with these and such like exercises they should be made skilfull & able with all aduantages to charge any Squadron of horsemen or footmen with great art and dexteritie.

Now peradventure some not skilful in matters of armes may say that I haue made in a maner no difference betwixt the charging of a Squadron of men at Armes, or Dimilaunces, and the receiuing of a charge of another Squadron of the like Weapons, because I doo allow to the Squadron that should charge but 30. paces, that is 20. galloping vpon the hand, and 10. for their full Carriere to giue the greater blow and shock: Wherevnto I answer that such as are leaders of any Squadron of Launces that will fall into their gallop 12. skores, or 15. skores distant or more, to the intent to charge another Squadron of Launces, shall finde themselves in so great a distance greatly disordered & confounded in their rankes, and their horses out of breath, and thereby the force of their blow and shocke greatlie weakened when they shall come to encounter with the Squadron of their enemies freshe, and not disordered, who haue put forward their Horses into their Carriere not about 10. paces.

An obiection answered.

Now if it should bee said vnto me that it were more meet that a Squadron of launces that is disposed to receaue a charge, should keepe their ground and stand firme with their launces in their rests rather then to fall into their carriere of 10. paces as aforesaid: I say that their receauing of a charge in standing still, should be greatly to their disauantage, because that force and violence in this action must be repulsed with the like or greater force & violence. For any man of iudgement by reason may consider that a Squadron of launces straighened and closed in frunt and flanks with their iust and proportionate distances coming to charge their enemies Squadron but 30. paces, that is 20.

The opinion of such as hold it best for launces to receiue a charge standing still, answered.

The disaduan-  
rage of a Squa-  
dron that recei-  
ueth a charge  
standing still.

galloping vpon the hand, and .10. with a terrible shoute in their full carriere will worke a wonderfull effect to the breaking of the Squadron of launces standing still, without mouing forward with any force. Besides that the disaduauntage of such a squadron as receaueth a charge standing still without mouing forward with force, is greatly augmented by the terror and thundering of their enemies horses feete vpon the ground comming in their full carriere, as also by the noise of the armors of the horsemen, and with the furious comming of the horses in squadron with the pointes of so many launces in the eyes and sights of both horses & men standing still in colde blood: whereas contrariwise the squadron comming but .30. or .40. paces in hoat blood to charge them, first galloping vpon the hand, & after in their full carriere as is aforesaid, doe gather heate, furie, and force, in such sorte as their blowe and shooke becommeth so violent, that it doth amaze, disorder and breake the contrary squadron with great facilitie; But a squadron of Launces standing firme vpon their ground vntill they see their enemies within .20. paces of them, & then putting themselves into their full carriere and meeting with their Enemies .10. paces of, it is distance enough to receaue and encounter them with as great force as if they had begun their carriere when the squadron of their Enemies was a greater distance of.

Where the En-  
signe bearer of  
men at Armes  
or the Guydon  
bearer of light  
horsemen are to  
be lodged.

But now in this place it is to be noted and obserued that the Ensigne bearer if he be of men at Armes, or the Guidon bearer, if he be of light horsemen, be euer lodged both in Campe and Towne in the Captaines Tent, or lodging, or very neer vnto the same, euer accompanied with the trumpeter of the same band, to the intent that they may receaue all orders and sudden directions; and hauing receaued the same, may signifie them by the soundes of the trumpet.

Light horsemen borderers I will not take vpon me to set downe any thing for their instructions how they should vse their speares in the field, because that they themselves by their continuall exercise are so skilful with al such weapons

as they do vse in the seruice of the borders. But yet I would wish them to learne to reduce themselues into semicircles or halfe moones into two rankes either by right line or else oblique, after the manner of the Turkes and Hongarians; Because I thinke that the same would be of great aduantage for them, for diuerse purposes, as I haue shewed by diuers demonstrations and formes in a Booke by me Composed 1585. and not yet printed, entituled; *Certen Military discourses, Arithmeticall Tables, formes and demonstrations to reduce both horsemen and footmen into many formes of squadrons. &c.*

Into what formes, light horsemen borderers are to reduce themselves.

But because that in my forementioned Booke I haue but only sett downe the formes and demonstrations of those semicircles by figures of little horsemen, and not how nor in what sort they should be reduced into those formes; I will here briefly set downe concerning those reducements, as also of the aduantages that such light horsemen haue in such semicircles against a squadron of Launces. And therefore to reduce them into the aforesaid formes, I say that if there be (for examples sake) 200. light horsemen; they are to march 2. in a ranke either by right line or oblique: And incase they march 2. in a ranke by right line, then euerie 2. horsemen are of equal frunt throughout from frunt to back as all other sortes of horsemen in their rankes are: But if they march in rankes oblique, then euerie second light horseman doth march retyred and a good distance wide from the first, in such sort as he may march and haue in flanke the midst of the voide ground that is betwixt his fellow formost horseman of his owne ranke, and the formost horseman of the second ranke, that followeth the first; and so likewise the second souldior of the second ranke is to follow him in the like sort, but marching and hauing on his flanke likewise the midst of the distance or voide ground that is betwixt his formost fellow of his owne ranke, and the formost light horseman of the third ranke; And so subsequentlie all the rest of the light horsemen must march in rankes oblique the one to the other.

How to reduce light horsemen or Stradiots in to the forme of a Semicircle.

Now all this band of 200. light horsemen reduced into



100. rankes marching by right line straight forward, are to be reduced into a semicircle in this sort following, that is, that one Conductor ought to march before all the rankes; And another last of all behinde all the rankes; Then after two other Conductors are to be placed in the verie midst, the one to take care and to see order obserued by the one halfe of the semicircle, that is of his right hand; and the other to see order obserued by the other halfe of the semicircle that is of his left hand: which conductors being so placed, and the Cornet either in the midst of the rankes of the light horsemen, or else in one of the formost rankes; then to reduce these 100. rankes into a semicircle, either the Capitaine, or formost Conductor must march with his band & fetch a great and a large compasse and circuite of ground, either vpon the right, or left hand, according as he intendeth to make the frunt of his semicircle: And thus he must leade his band in compasse and halfe circle, vntill he seeth the hindermost ranke right ouer, and against in semicircle to the formost ranke of all the bande, which he himselfe leadeth: which he perceiuing, then he must commaund his trompettor to sound a stay or pause, which done, the trompettor must gallop towards the midst of the semicircle; I meane of the inner or compasse side, and there must againe sound to make of flanke frunt: which being performed, then of 100. ranks of 2. in a ranke that they were before, they are now become to be only 2. rankes of 100. in each ranke, which being performed, then may they march in this forme of semicircle in their rankes, either by right line or oblique if the fields be large and open (as they are most commonly in Fraunce, and many other Countries) with great facilitie: And incase there were a Squadron of 150. Launces that would thinke to breake that semicircle by a charge giuen in the midst of the same semicircle, then the aduantage of the semicircle is, vpon the instant and verie beginning of the charge of the launces to open themselues in the midst; the formost Conductor of the Corner of the right hand galloping large and something in compasse, and

The aduantage  
of a semicircle  
of light horse-  
men or Stradi-  
ois, against a  
squadron of  
launces;

and leading the one halfe of the semicircle of light horsemen, vpon the one flanke of the squadron of Launces; and the other Conductor of the other ende, or corner of the semicircle to galloppe likewise somewhat large in compasse, and lead the other halfe of the semicircle to charge vpon the other flanke of the squadron of Launces, and with terrible noises and shoutes to charge both the flanks, as also the backe of the squadron with their speares al at one time. Or if the Semicircle bee all of stradiots, with their zagaiaes, which are double headed Launces, then that they beeing lead by their Conductors and opening in the midite, as aforesaid, doo charge both the flanks and backe of the squadron with their zagaiaes striking both forward and backward, killing, and wounding, both horses and men.

By which new, extraordinarie, and vnexpected kinde of charge, the squadron of Launces that thought by right line to haue charged and broken the semicircle in the midst finding nothing there before them to charge but onely the ayre, are forced to make a stay or stand, and to defend themselves with great disadvantage of Weapon; and are compelled to make frunt of both their flanks and backe, all at one time; which they can no waies performe without disordering themselves out of all forme: whereof, and by the neernesse of the light horsemen bee they speares or zagaiaes, that haue charged them, as aforesaid, it commeth to passe, that they haue not any ground nor roome to put their horses into any Carrire, nor to charge their launces into their restes, thereby to giue the greater blow and shocke, or anie other waies to annoy the light horsemen, that haue charged & do with their zagaiaes, or speares vsed as punching staues, wounde and kill them and their horses both in flanks and backe, as aforesaid, by meanes whereof they haue not onelie vtterlie lost the vse of their Launces, but are driuen with many wounds already receiued to disorder all their ranks & squadron & in tumultuarie and disordred sort, to fight with their swords, and other such short weapons against the said

light horsemen with their punching staues, to the great disaduantage and vtter ruine of the Launces.

And whereas I haue shewed this order of marching of a semicircle of two ranks oblique according to the Hongarian and Turkie manner: I say that it hath beene and is in respect, that if any other such light horsemen in ranks by right line should charge them, that the hindermost light horsemen of the second ranke, that are oblique in ranke to their fellowes before them, may at the same instant, haue more open and conueniencie of ground to succour their fellowes in the formost ranke, and to charge their enemies, then they otherwise could haue, if they were by right line directly behind the first ranke.

*The great effects that Stradiots, Archers on horsebacke, and Crosbowers on horseback, are to performe in the field, both against horsemen and footmen, with also, the great aduantage that they haue against Carabins, and against Reistres, and all other weapons of fire on horsebacke, in seruices of the field.*



Stradiots before mentioned are a kinde of light horsemen that haue beene vsed of many yeares both in Italie, Fraunce, Spaine and Germanie, although in their weapons & manner of arming, euery Nation hath differd one from another more or lesse. Amongst the Pagans, the Arabians and Persians, the Turks and the Tartars, in such ages as they conquered the greatest part of Europe, Affricke and Asia, vsed almost no other souldiors and weapons on horsebacke but light horsemen Launciers with long launces, Stradiots with Launcezagaias headed with two steeled heades, Archers with their bowes; and Crosbowers, and althose with their Cemeteries and straight or crooked daggers, and other weapons in vse with them.

Now these light horsemen stradiots that haue been vsed by so many Nations are of great execution and seruice in the

Stradiots much  
vsed in times  
past.

Stradiots of  
great executio  
and effect in  
the field.



the fielde, both againſt horſemen and footmen diſordered, and very excellent to enter into and maintaine ſkirmiſhe, chieflie if they be incorporated with Archers on horſeback, and Croſbowers on horſebacke: The difference of which armors, weapons, horſes, and other furniture belonging to thoſe three ſorts of weapons I omit, becauſe I haue verie particularlie ſet down mine opinion of thoſe matters in my forementioned book, entituled; *Certen Military diſcourſes, Arithmetical Tables, formes and demonſtrations, &c.* by me Compoſed 1585. not yet printed. Now therefore I will make mention of nothing elſe but how they ſhoulde behaue themſelues in the field againſt their enemies; and that I would haue them to performe in this ſort.

Stradiots, archers on horſebacke, and Croſbowers on horſeback, being incorporated into bandes, euery band of 100. of the which I would haue 40. ſtradiots, 30. archers, and 30. Croſbowers all on horſeback, and all thoſe reduced into Cameradas or ſocieties of tennes, or fifteenes I would wiſh that they ſhould not fight in ſquadrons nor in great troupes as men at armes and dimilaunces ſhould do; but that they ſhould fight in many little troupes of tennes, or fifteens, or twenties, and not aboue; and that they ſhould charge a ſquadron or troupe, or diuers ſquadrons or troupes of Launces in frunt, flanks and backe, in many little troupes ſome aduanced, and ſome retired, in ſuch ſort, as all the troupes next vnto the ſquadron of their enemies horſe, might haue other troupes in wing more retired to ſecond and ſuccour them; and that the troupes of archers & Croſbowers ſhould giue their volees of arrowes and quarrels at the ſquadrons or troupes of their Enemies both in frunt, flanks and backe, all at one time, and that the little troupes of Stradiots ſhould remaine in winges ſomewhat retired, readie vppon all occaſions of any diſorder of their enemies to giue in, by flanks, and backe, and to kill, or wound the horſes of their enemies; and that in caſe the Launces being in great ſquadrons, or troupes, ſhould charge them; that then they ſhould preſentlie caſt about and ſie in their little

How ſtradiots  
Archers on  
horſebacke,  
& Croſbowers  
on horſebacke,  
incorporated  
in bands, are to  
behaue them-  
ſelues in the  
field.

troupes, and that they should disperse their troupes all ouer the large fieldes, in such sort, that the squadrons of launces should not well know which troupes to followe; and that vpon the Launces pursuing of those troupes; that other little troupes and societies should charge them againe both in backe and flanks, and that with terrible shoutes and volces of quarrels and arrowes, the Stradiots at the same time galloping in their troups by the hinder corners of the squadron, should wound their horses with their Launcezagayas, and giue them occasion to stay their pursuit, & to make head against them; which if the Launces doo without disordering themselues; then I would wish those troupes that charged the backe and flanks presently likewise to disperse and flie: and that the other little troupes that they had followed before, should vpon some extraordinarie shout or hubabub, ( whereto they should bee inured ) returne againe vpon them with new charges and volces both in backe and flanks with terrible shoutes and cries as afore-said: In such sort that although all the little troupes of Stradiots, and shot, doo not exceed the number of the launces in their great squadrons; yet that their false charges should be such, so many, and so continuall in giuing their volces in frunt, flanks, and backe, as that by continuall molesting of them, they should put them in hazard to disorder themselves and disperse: which if it shoulde happen; then that the Stradiots should enter pelle melle amongst the Launces, and striking both forward and backward with their Launces that haue double heades, should kill or wounde their horses; and so by the aduantage of their weapons, should doo execution vpon their Enemies to their vtter ouerthrow.

Now peraduenture some wil saie that there are no squadrons of Launces, that wilbee without some companies of Carabins, and Argolettiers, or else of Reistres to succour them, which should greatlie trouble the archers and Cross-bowers to worke the effect before declared. To the which I answer, that I am perswaded that if the Stradiots, archers, and

and Crosbowers, bee as many in number, as the Launces, and Argolettiers, or Reistres; that the Argolettiers or Reistres will bee of small succour to the Launces against those kindes of weapons, but that they would vpon three or four volces of quarrels and arrowes turne their backes, and leaue the launces to defend themselues: For Argolettiers, or Reistres in true experience, are not to discharge their peeces and work any effect about 6. 8. or 10. paces distant, and yet that too farre, considering the vncertentie of those weapons caused through the motion of their horses: whereas Crosbowers and chiefelie archers, may worke very certain and great effect to the mischiefe both of men and horses a great deale greater distance off; which with diuers other reasons that for breuities sake I omit, do perswade me to thinke that 2000. Carabins or Reistres, are not able in the fiede to abide the charge and volce of 1000. stradiots, Archers and Crosbowers.

Argolettiers  
Carabins, or  
Reistres are of  
small succor to  
a squadron of  
launces against  
stradiots, ar-  
chers and cros-  
bowers.

The distances  
wherein Argo-  
lettiers or  
Reistres are to  
discharge their  
peeces.

Now the effectes that bandes of stradiots, archers and Crosbowers on horsebacke may worke against footmen, vpon diuers opportunities are, that they may giue their volces of quarrels, and arrowes at randon into the squadron of piquers or into the winges, or sleeues of shot, to the disturbing and molesting of their orders; and vpon the overthrow of horsmen or footmen be they armed men or shot, the stradiots in following the chase may doo great execution and slaughter by striking both forward and backward with their double headed launces. And these actions before declared are in mine opinion the chiefe effectes of those three sortes of weapons incorporated in bandes, as aforesaid.

The effectes of  
bands of stradi-  
ots archers &  
crosbowers on  
horsebacke a-  
gainst footmen  
in the field.

And thus hauing now finished all such instructions, and aduertisements militarie as haue at this time fallen into my remembrance, that doo concern the ordering, forming and exercising of single bandes and companies aswell of horsmen as of footmen, as also of reducing and forming of squadrons into al the chiefe formes of battles y are requisit for armies to march or fight withal in the open fields, with



manie other important particularities: I wil now (with the helpe of Almightye God) proceed to the setting downe of mine opinion how new bands and companies that should be elected and enrolled for defence of the Realme, or for forren inuasion, are to be elected, inrolled, armed and weaponed, with diuers other particularities. For as for the mustering of olde bandes that haue either serued long in Armies, or in Garrisons, they are matters so cōmon in vse, as it might be holden but for superfluous to set downe the orders and proceedings concerning the same; considering that the most of all Warrelike Nations doo obserue almost all one sort of proceedings and obseruations in viewing and mustering of armies and Garrisons that haue of long time serued.

Certen pro-



# Certen proceedinges and obseruations

*that I would wish to be obserued in the first election, enrolling, arming, and weaponing of Souldiors, for any employment; but chieflie for the ordinarie bandes and companies of horsemen and footmen that are to be chosen in the Shieres of England, for the defence of the Realme, or for forren Inuasion; as also for taking of reueues of musters againe from time to time, with diuers other particularities.*



He first thing of all others that doth belong to any perfect *Militia*, either of horsemen or of footmen, or of both, is good and orderly and sufficient Election and choice of soldiors, which we commonly call taking of Musters, without which well and sufficiently performed,

The first and cheife thing of all others that doth belong to anie perfect *Militia* is good election and choice.

all the rest of any *Militia* and discipline Militarie can haue no good forme, nor worke any great effect: and therefore, according to orderly writing, I should first haue begon to haue written of the same: Howbeit, because I meane to write but of some partes thereof; I thought good in that respect to set it downe in the end of these my former instructions: And therefore I say that there are only two principal causes of elections, enrollements, & leuies of men of warre, of the which the first is for employments, and seruices by Sea; into the which there do enter none but only footmen and that of two sorts: the one Maisters of Shippes, officers, mariners, and saylers that are to mannage the Shippes, and all other sorts of artificers that are to repaire the Shippes, and all things belonging to the same: And the other of soldiors and their officers that are chosen, elected and leuied to vse their weapons for the annoying of the Enemie, and defence of the ships; in which number of soldiors are contained, all sortes of gonners and officers belonging to great ordinaunce, as also all others that do receaue paie for and concerning

Two principal causes of elections inrollements and leuies of men of warre.

The first.

The second.

concerning those seruices; which because it is a distinct and different thing from that part of the *Militia*, that I intend to handle, I will omit. Now the second cause of musters and leuies, is, for employment and seruices by land, either for a warre offensive, or defensive or for both; into the which doth enter the first elections, choice, and enrollements aswell of horsemen, as of footmen, and aswell the horsemen, as the footmen of different sorts of armors and weapons.

Now because I haue in diuers partes of Christendome seene soldiours both horsemen, and footmen elected, inrolled, and leuied, in some Countries with greater order, and in others with lesse; and that also I haue partly obserued the ancient maner of election, inrolling, arming & furnishing of soldiours here in England when I was yong, as also the proceedings in those affaires of this time; I thought good in this place to set downe my opinion how and in what sorte, I would haue al horsemen and footmen of such armors and weapons as we at this present in England do vse, to be elected inrolled and euerie waies furnished; and therewithall in their first election and inrollement instructed: And therefore I will first beginne with footmen.

Three principall things to be obserued in all right and true elections of soldiours, by coronells captains, and muster maisters,

Concerning the conueniency of yeares of such as are to be elected and inrolled for soldiours.

And because that in all right and true elections and first enrollements of men of war, there be three principall things to be regarded and obserued, of the which the first is, conueniencie of age and yeares: The second Corporall disposition and abilitie of bodie: and the third, honestie, which proceedeth from honest education, which in respect of obedience Militarie that insueth thereof, is no lesse requisite then the other two: therefore I meane to include those as three principall matters belonging to my whole election. Of the which three concerning conueniencie of yeares, I thinke none meete to be elected and inrolled vnder the age of .18. yeares; which is the lowest age that hath bene allowable amongst all warlike nations of auntient and moderne times; nor none aboue the age of .35. or .40. at the most: And of the age of .18. I would haue none elected vnlesse



vnlesse they were of so great growth, & corporall disposition, as that they were able to perform the duties & effects of souldiors, which verie fewe at that age can. And such as should be elected after the age of 18. I would haue to continue souldiors vntill they come to the age of 45. in case their health and corporall disposition of bodie, doo continue in them vntil that age.

And so likewise, I would that such as were elected through their good disposition of bodies to bee souldiors at 35. or 40. yeares old, should with good account and credit in the shiers where they dwell, be dismissed from being souldiors at the age of 45. and no waies further to bee employed in matters militarie, vnlesse their wisdome and sufficiencie were such, as they were to serue as officers of bandes. And the causes wherefore I would not haue any to bee elected to bee souldiors about the age of 40. or to continue souldiors about the age of 5. yeares more, which is 45. are; that to elect and leaue olde men that neuer serued before to bee young souldiors, is contrarie to all discipline; and to serue as priuate souldiors about the age of 45. (vnlesse they bee excellent archers in perfection of strong and cleane shooting) it is more then is conuenient, considering that for the defence of a kingdome where there is choice of young men enough, it were contrarie to all reason and discipline that they should continue their seruices as priuate souldiors any longer, then vntil that age of 45. but in the countries where they dwell, at that age with great credit to be dismissed, that they may the better intend and follow their owne priuate affaires, and other yoonger men of sufficiencie and abilitie of bodie and mind to bee chosen in their places: And thus far concerning conueniencie of yeares.

And now to the second sufficiencie that is to bee required in such as are to be elected and inrolled to be souldiors either horsemen or footmen; which is good and conuenient corporal disposition of body and minde, able and apt to handle, or to learne to handle & vse diuers sorts of wea-

Aa

pons

Concerning  
the good and  
conuenient  
corporall dis-  
position of bo-  
die of such as  
are to bee e-  
lected and in-  
rolled for sol-  
diors.

pons, without which none are worthy nor meet to be elected and enrolled for priuate soldiours. First therefore I would concerning the same, that the choice and election should be such, as euery souldior that should be chosen should bee a man well formed and dispost of body and mind, and therefore meet and fit either by former exercise from his youth; or at least by aptnesse of mind and force, to learne the vse of such weapons as he should be chosen and inrolled vnto: as for example: I would haue no man chosen to be an Archer that had not so practised the vse of his bow from his youth, that he should bee able to shoot strong, or at the least of a conuenient strength and long arrowes, and therewithall vfed by continuall exercise to draw his arrow with three fingers, and not with two (according to the new fashion) to the head: of which shooters with two fingers, I would haue none to be allowed for archers, how faire soeuer they shoot, vnlesse they could verie well reforme themselves from that fond new fashion: because that in their so shooting they loose a great deale of the strength of their draught. And thus farre in this place concerning corporall disposition of bodie.

And now to the third sufficiencie of such as are to be elected, chosen & inrolled, which is honestie, I would that all such as should be elected and inrolled should be of honest parentage, and that their education and course of life had bene such, as there were no notable vice to be noted in them, and chiefly of dronkenesse, theft, blaspheming, common swearing or brawling. Al which vices are such, as they cause al such as are possessed of them to be disordered, mutinous, and disobedient; which are things most contrary to all true discipline. Also I would if it might be, that all such as should be elected and chosen to be soldiours, should be of themselves of some abilitie and substance either in landes, or goods, or both; or else that from their parentes they should be in possibilitie after their deceases to enioye some lands, or goods, or both: And I would that they should be of those two conditions before mentioned; I meane of  
good

Archers shooting with two fingers are not to be allowed for soldiours archers,

Concerning the honestie of such as are to be elected, chosen and inrolled,

good parentage & present hauiour, or in possibilitie by the death of their parents as aforſaid, becauſe y ſame ſhould be a kind of obligation to their captains, as alſo to y common wealth, for their good and obedient behauior, in their vocation and degrees of ſoldiorie. Beſides all which I would haue all ſoldiors and officers of bands at their firſt election and enrolment to take their oathes of fidelitie and loyaltie to the crowne and Realme of England; as alſo of obedience to their captains and officers, in ſuch matters as doo concerne the arte, ſcience, and diſcipline militarie, for the defence of the Crowne and Realme of England.

All ſoldiors & officers of bands are at their firſt election and enrolment, to take their othes of fidelitie to the crowne and Realme of England and obedience to their captains and ſuperior officers.

Now the election and inrollment of the archers, as alſo of all the reſt of the ſoldiors of other weapons being taken with ſuch regard and reſpect as aforſaid; I would then haue them to be armed verie fitly and conueniently according to euerie different ſorte of weapon: And becauſe that no man can be conueniently and fitly armed, vnleſſe he be firſt fitly apparelled for his armor, and alſo for the uſe of his weapon, and that in the campe and armie at Tilburie 1588. wheras there were the regiments of diuers ſhieres, with diuers bands both of dimilaunces and light hormanen, I did ſee and obſerue, ſo great diſorder and deformitie in their apparel, to arme withall, as I ſaw but a very few of that Army that had any conueniencie of apparel, and chieflie of doublets to arme vpon; whereof it came to paſſe that the moſt of them did weare their armors verie vncomelie, and vneafilie; which foreſaid doublets if they bee not conuenientlie made, and of purpoſe to arme vpon according to the uſe of all antiquitie, it is not poſſible that armed men horſemen, nor footemen ſhould finde themſelues in their armors at eaſe: nor that they ſhould uſe their weapons with ſuch dexteritie as they may doo if their garments be purpoſelie and fitlie made to arme vpon; nor yet that there can bee any comlineſſe in wearing their armors vpon ſuch deformed doublets; I would firſt therefore, that there ſhould be ſpeciall regard had to the fit and conuenient apparelling of all ſortes of ſouldiors; and therefore to begin with ſouldiors

No man can be conueniently armed vnleſſe he be firſt fitly apparelled.



Concerning  
the conuenient  
apparelling of  
all sorts of sol-  
diers.

doublts, I would that their doublts should bee made of Fustian according to the vse of all antiquitie, or of chamoise skinnes, aswel in respect of lasting, as that a man may arme better vpon any of both those thinges, then vpon Canuas, or any thinge that is more smooth, and lesse woollie.

Then concerning the form and fashion of their doublts, I would that they should be of a conuenient heighth in the Collers, aswel to defend their necks from cold in winter, as from heate in Summer. Then, I woulde that they should be narrow in the shoulders, & so smal in the sleeues, and with so little bumbast, that the vambrases of armed men might easilie close together; and that archers vsing no vambrases but certen stripes of serecloth or maile within their sleeues to defend the cut of a sworde, might through the smalnesse of their sleeues easilie draw and shoo, without the string hitting vpon any part of the sleeue, but onelie vpon their bracers.

Then I would that their doublts should be made easie and wide vpon the stomacks and breastes, that the souldiers being not pent by the straightnesse of their doublts vpon their breastes, might the easlier fetch their breath either in fighting, or in any hastie march: and therewithall, that their doublts be cutte flat vpon the bellie, and wasted oflike length to the Cuirasses of their armors, to the intent that armed mens armors might sit the more iust and flat to their bodies: But because the collars of armors doo beare the chiefe waight of all the rest of the armour, I would wish that the souldiers armed men horsmen, or footmen, should either haue vnder Collars of Fustian conuenientlie bombasted to defende the heueth and poise of their armours from the paining, or hurting of their shoulders and necks; or else that their doublts should be verie well bombasted in all that part vnder their Collars both before and behind according to the depth of the same, which will bee a great ease to all armed men horsmen or footmen, for their often and long continuing armed.

Also I would that no armed men should weare any cut doublets, as well in respect that the wearing of armour doth quicklie fret them out, and also by reason that the corners and edges of the lammes and iointes of the armours doo take such holde vppon such cuttes, as they doo hinder the quicke and sudden arming of men; as also that they are of more impediment to harquebuziers, mosquetiers, and archers, for diuers respects to all skilfull soldiors wel knowne, then doublets vncut are. Then I would wishe that there should bee regard had to their hosen, that they might bee easie for them to march and fight in; which the new fashion straight hosen are not: and therefore I would that they should rather weare Greygescoes too vnder the knee, that shoulde bee large, wide, and easie, lined with a Cotton lining without any bombast; and next to the thigh with a strong Canuas lining or false sloppe, wherevnto the nether stockinges should be set and sowed, and gartered vnder the knee, then either these new fashioned little round hose, or newe fashion'd bombasted Greygescoes that are very straight to the thighs and vpper parts; which in summer besides the vneasinesse of them, doo with so much bombast keep armed men exceeding hot, whereas the other beeing large and wide as aforesaid, something after the fashion that the Spanish souldiors doo vse, are a great deale more easie, and chieffie for all sorts of footmen.

Now as for their armors I would wish, that archers should either weare llet holed doublets, that wil resist the thrust of a sword, or dagger, and couered with some trim and gallant kinde of coloured cloth to the liking of the Captains, with their sleeues striped within, with certen narrow stripes of serecloth or maile, to resist the cut of a sword, or else lackes of maile quilted vpon fustian to resist a blow or a thrust, of a conuenient length, and the skirts not too long, in respect of the lightnes & easines of them: with their doublet sleeues as aforesaid; and for the defence of their heads, because these Steele-Cappes commonly vsed, are of verie small comlines for soldiors, and most of them too shallow, and therefore of

How archers  
should be ar-  
med and wea-  
poned.

small defence, I would wish some new and gallant fashion morrions verie light and easie to be made for archers to weare without any couering vpon them, but that they should be milde or burnished white; which besides their greater defence, being well and aptly made; would with their brightnesse greatly bewtifie the archers that do weare them. And as for the archers bowes, I would that they should not be short after the new vse which causeth them often to breake, but that they should be long and well backt and nockt, according to the auncient vse; and their strings whipt with fine thred, or silke; and that they should head and make their first sheafes of arrowes, according to the length that they do commonly vse to drawe. The blades of their swordes I would haue to be verie good, and of the length of a yard and not aboue; with their hilts only made with .2. portes, a greater and a smaller on the out side of the hiltes, after the fashion of the Italian and Spanishe arming swordes; and those swordes I would haue them to weare with strong girdles of leather, their hangers of such conuenient length, and so well formed as their swordes might hang vpon the vpper parts of their thighes; not only readie and verie easie to be drawn; but also by their well hanging of them straight forward and backward, (I meane not athwarte their bodies, as drommers, to giue place & rounge to their drommes do vse; nor yet so farre forward as they may lie athwarte their Codpeeces, as great boies do vse at their first wearing of swordes when they come new from schoole) that the said soldiours swords vpon their hastie march, or any other occasion by their straight and well standing of them, should hang firme without dauncing, or bobbing forward and backward, as swords vnsoldi- orly worne, do commonly vse. The blades of their daggers also, I would wish them to be not aboue 10 inches long, and that the hilts of the same should be only made of one single and short crosse without any portes, or hilts at all, and not with great hilts after the fencers or alehouse fashion; and that they should weare their daggers not vpon their  
girdles



girdles at their backs, but hanging downe vpon their right thighes before them, after the old English fashion; and because that their daggers should stand the more firme and steadie without bobbing or dauncing vp and downe vpon the hastie march of the soldiors; I would that they should weare them in leathers, after the fashion that I sawe some of the soldiors of Sir Iohn Peters band deuise and vse, at such time as I mustered his band neare vnto Brentwood the yeare 1588. Vvhich leathers being of the length of 7. inches, and 3. inches broad beneath, but aboue not so broad, and haue in the vpper parts two cuts straight downeward, for the waste of the girdle to goe through, and in the lower end, two cuts straight athwart, for the dagger sheath to be thrust through and downe euen to the verie locket; & then the locket of the dagger being fastned a little aboue, to two holes through the leather right against the same with a string or a lace; such daggers so worne, doo stand wonderfull firme, and verie readie for souldiors, archers, or armed men to draw, and with thrustes to vse the pointes of them. The archers also I would haue them to vse shooting gloues with the inner partes of the fingers of Bucks leather, and in no wise any leathers called finger stalles after the new fashion. Al their bracers also I would haue after the old fashion of our English archers to many well known, and not according to the new deuises. And thus farre concerning the election, apparelling, arming, and weaponing of archers. And now to the election, apparelling, arming and weaponing of harquebuziers.

Harquebuziers I would wish them to be elected and chosen of the yongest sort of men, and of the meanest stature and size of all other sortes that should be allowed of, to be elected and inrolled, and chieffie of such as haue small skill and dexteritie in the long bowe, and archerie: For I would that such as were skilfull in the long bow; I meane good archers of what size of men soeuer; that they should not be inrolled to any other weapon, considering that the number of good archers of our Nation in these daies are so few,

Concerning  
the election  
apparelling, ar-  
ming, and wea-  
poning of har-  
quebuziers.

few, and that, that kind of weapon is of so wonderfull and miraculous effect in seruices of the field as by all auncient and moderne experience amongst all Nations it hath bene and is most manifest. Harquebuziers therefore I would haue them to be of the yongest sort of men, as aforesaid, because they should be the more nimble to trauesse their grounds, and to stoope to their peeces, and to take all aduantages of groundes, and of the smallest sorte and size of men, because they should be the lesser markes in the sights of their enemies in skirmish neare at hand, as is in my former instructions at large contained.

Their apparell I would haue to be dublets of fustian without any cuttes, and Greigelscoes all of the like sort and fashion, as I haue before particulerlie set downe concerning archers; and that they should haue euerie one of them a saltenberg, commonly called a Mandilion of very good broad cloath that will not shrink, to encouer and keepe drie their flasks and touchboxes and the pans and touchholes of their harquebuzes in the time of wet & moist weather; and the same handsomely made to their bodies, and of such Colours as euerie one of their Captaines should make choice of.

And therewithal that euerie one of them should haue an vpright or sharpe morrion fast tied with a red skarfe vnder their Chins after the spanish fashion, all white and grauen, or at least, white vngrauen, and in no wise any black morrions; because that the white doth beutefie the soldiors more, and is of greater terror in the eie and sight of the Enemy. The Cannons of their harquebuzes I would haue them to be all of the length of a yard and not any longer nor shorter all ranforced backward, and conuenientlie thinne forward; and that the sights of their harquebuzes should be all open sights; I meane without any pipes or couers vpon them, because they might the more readilie take their sightes either from point at blanke if time will serue, or else from the endes of their peeces. I would also that all those sights as also the pins of their peeces should be very euen and straight  
set

set and filed to a iust and conuenient heigth; and their peeces chosen without any cracks or flawes within, verie well boarded and drawbored, and therewithal their vices at the hinder ends of their peeces of such conuenient length, & so well made and filed, that their harquebuzes should not recoile: besides all which I would that all their bullettes should be of one Caliuier and heigth, and that of a meane size for diuers causes, & reasons that I haue before in mine instructions alledged.

All the stocks of their harquebuzes I would haue them to be crooked (as we call them) and of good forme, and not straight stocks, because that being crooked and compassed stocks they doo more readily counterpoise the fore end of their peeces, and more readilie fall into leuell when they are in skirmish, and haue no leifure to take any sight from point at blanke, but from the fore ends of their peeces, then straight stockes doe: Besides that considering the lightnesse of their peeces they may aswell and as readilie without rests at any time take their sights from point at blanke with crooked stockes of good forme as if they were straight. The Cockes, or serpentines I would haue to be of conuenient compasse and able to receiue any conuenient match, and that the feathers and springs that doo belong vnto them should be of so hard and good temper, that they shoulde cause the Cockes or serpentines to fall and rise so strong and quicke, as by their strong falling with the matches into the pannes, they may make the fire to sparcle, thereby in an instant to make the powder to take fire.

Then I would that euery harquebuzier should haue a good and a faire flaske and touchbox, with strings to them of conuenient length, and that they should bee taught by their Corporalles very souldiorlie to weare them, and to keep their powder in their flasks and touchboxes very drie. And I would that the pipes or mouths of their flasks should be a iust charge for their harquebuzes according to the vse of the Spaniardes and Wallouns, and that the



feathers and springs that doo make the plate or couer of the lower part of the mouthes of their flasks to open and couer againe, should be of so good temper as they might open and couer quicke and close, that the souldiors thereby might bee assured not to ouercharge their peeces to their daunger.

Then I would that euerie harquebuzier should haue in a little purse, or in a little bagge in his pocket, a little steele with a flint, and a little peece of a certen kind of tinder like a sponge, such as the harquebuziers Spaniards doo vse, to strike fire to light their matches, with scourers, skrues, prining irons, and mouldes, and all other things requisite for the well charging and keeping of their harquebuzes clean and neat. Swordes also the blads of the length of a yard, with hiltes of the fashion before mentioned, with strong leather girdles, able to beare their swordes, flasks, and touchboxes, I would wish euerie harquebuzier to haue; & that they should weare their swordes of such conuenient heighth, as I haue before declared, that archers and armed men ought to doo: But as for daggers, I would wish no harquebuzier to weare any, because they haue so seldome occasion to vse them: and therefore doo rather increase heueth and burthen then serue for any other purpose; the experience whereof hath taught the harquebuziers of all Nations to weare no daggers; Besides all which, I would haue the harquebuziers to be taught, as also the mosque-tiers, to know the differences of powder and of match, that they may bee the better able to know what charges they shall giue to their peeces, according to the goodnesse or badnesse of the powder, and therewithall alwaies in skirmish or otherwise to charge their peeces with some softe paper, or something else betwixt their powder and their bullets, and after their bullets to restraine the same: and to haue their flasks full of good and drie powder well corned; and their touchboxes full of fine and drie touchpowder, with al other things requisit to the well vsing of their peeces, and thus farre concerning harquebuziers.

Mosque-

Mosquetiers I would wish to be elected of such men as are of good force & strength of bodie, although they were but of meane statures, for the tallest and best formed men I would haue reserued for armed men piquers, and battle-axes or halbarders to be reduced into squadrons or battles; and yet I would not as aforesaid, that any good or strong archers should be enrolled to any other kind of weapon, but onely to the longbowe, for the causes before mentioned. But it is conuenient that mosquetiers should bee of good force, and strength, in respect of the heauines of their weapons and furniture, that by their strength and agilitie, they may the better cary, handle, and mannage their mosquets: And I would wish that they should be euerie waies apparelled, and that they should weare their swordes in strong girdles without any daggers as the harquebuziers aforesaid, and that they should be armed with the like morrions to the harquebuziers before mentioned. Then I would wish that all their mosquets should be of one length well reinforced backward, and of conuenient thinnesse forward, and of one heighth, or caluer of bullet with open sights, and in all other things and particularities of the like perfection to the harquebuzes that I haue before mentioned.

But all the mosquets I would haue them to bee with straight stocks because that considering their rests with the great heueth of their peeces they may the better sett the straight stocks to their shoulders and take their sights more readily & certainly from point at blank, then if their stocks were crooked. Their iron forkes, or rests I would haue them to be well and euen formed, that when the staues are fixed in the ground, their mosquets mightly iust and euen in their rests, which they cannot do if they be made higher on the one side then of the other, as many are. The staues of their rests, I would wishe to be of iust and conuenient length and strength with piques of a good length that they may enter a good waie in and stand the more firme in the ground. Their flasks, touchboxes, and stringes I would haue to be of as great perfection as the flaske and touch-

How mosquetiers should be elected apparelled, armed, and weaponed

The Author would that all mosquets carriers of warre, and other such peeces as are to be vsed in the field with rests, or in places fortified or against places fortified should haue straight stocks and that all other lighter peeces that are for the skirmish and therefore to be vsed without rests, should haue crooked stocks.

boxes of y<sup>e</sup> harquebuziers before mentioned. And I would wish that they should charge their mosquets with powder out of the pipes or charges of the flasks as the harquebuziers aforesaid, and not out of charges that hang vpon band rolles as many doo vse: Because that oftentimes the couers of such charges doo flie off, and shed the powder, in such sort as the mosquetiers if they be not olde souldiors or wel practised, doo sometimes thinke that they charge their peeces out of such bandrol charges, when the powder was spilt before, so as sometimes they put in their bullets into their peeces without any powder.

And I would that euerie societie or fellowship of 10. mosquetiers should haue one great mould to cast 2. sortes of bullets, the one full bullets, and the other 2. or 3. bores smaller to charge vpon some occasion with the more celeritie. Also that the same mould should bee so long and bigge, as it should be able to cast at one time 8. haileshot of warre besides the bulletes, which haileshot of Warre should be of the heigth and Caluer of small pistoll bullets. And this great moule with a melting pan and lead, and all other things belonging to the same, should be for the common vse of the whole societie of 10. mosquetiers: as the like pan and mould and other things which I for breuities sake did omit should be for the common vse of euerie societie of 10. harquebuziers. And yet it doth behooue the societies aswell of mosquetiers as of harquebuziers to haue some priuate mouldes for bullets, besides their common and publike mould. And thus far concerning mosquetiers. And now to armed men piquers.

How piquers  
should be appa-  
relled armed &  
weaponed.

The arming doublets and greygescoes for armed men piquers, I haue before described, and therefore I proceed to the arming and weaponing of them, as followeth. I would haue all the piquers armed with burgonets of good depth wel lined and stuffed for the easinesse of their heads, and tied with a red skarfe vnder their chinnes, and that they should not wear them flapping open vntied, as I haue seene many of our Mosquetiers and armed men heere at home



home doo. Also I would haue them armed with collers of a good size, with backes and with cuyrats not too flat but somthing high vpon the stomachs, that they may easily in any hastie march fetch their breaths: & the belly or lower part of the Cuirasses, I would haue to bee lowe, and rather somthing flat then any thing rising or high, because they may hauing their vambraces on, the more easily put their hands to their swords without any impediment of y<sup>e</sup> ouer-much heighth of the lower parts, or bellies of their Cuirasses. Also I would haue them to haue tassels to y<sup>e</sup> mid thigh not too broad, but of conuenient length and breadth, comely and fit for their greygescoes.

Also I would haue them to haue pouldrons of a good compasse and size, and vambraces both ioined together, and not asunder, because that the poise of the pouldrons and vambraces, hanging vpon the pinnes and springes of their collars, they doo not weigh so much, nor are not so wearisome as when they are separated; and that they weare their vambraces tied with pointes to their doublets vnder their pouldrons; Also I would that al armed men should weare gauntlets, as the armed men piquers Italians, and Spaniards doo, and not to be bare and disarmed handed as our English and some other Nations of late years haue vsed, because that any smal wound receiued vpon y<sup>e</sup> hands doth presently make such souldiors impotent, and vnable to vse their weapons that haue receiued such woundes although they be but small. Their swords, their daggers, and their girdles I haue before particularlie set down, how and in what sort I would haue them to weare them. Their piques also I would wish them all to bee of the length of 18. foote, and neither longer nor shorter for the causes in my former instructions and discourses mentioned, as also contained in my Booke of certen Discourses printed 1590. and that they shoulde haue verie good and foure square heads of good temper, and lowe armed with long cheeks, and in y<sup>e</sup> midst couered or armed with black lether or black vellure, or with some other such thing, and y<sup>e</sup> they

should not be too great nor heauie in wood, that thereby the souldiors may carrie them and mannage them with ease.

Also I would that the staues of the piques should bee of a tite and stiffe ashe, and not of ashe that dooth sagge, and bend when the piquers doo carrie their piques breasthigh before hand couched, because that such sagging and bending ashe, although it be verie tough yet it is more heauie then the other ashe: besides that the piquers cannot carry the ~~piques~~<sup>pikes</sup> of such sagging, and bending piques so euen and straight in their Enemies faces, as they may carrie the other piques that doo not bend nor sagge, but are tite and straight. And thus farre concerning armed men piquers, And now to battleaxes or halbarders.

Concerning  
the election  
apparelling ar-  
ming and wea-  
poning of soldi-  
ors with battle-  
axes.

The election, choice and inrolment, of souldiors with battleaxes or halbarders, I would wish to bee of the taller and stronger sort of men, and that al the halbarders or battleaxes that should be to enter into squadron, should bee apparellled and armed in Corslets in all points and peeces of armour like vnto the piquers before mentioned: and yet if those halbarders or battleaxes in stead of pouldrons and vambraces did weare sleeues of good reueted maile that might couer all their shoulders and armes euen from vnder their Collers, breasts and backes, to the verie Gauntlets, considering that by the good defence and easinesse of such sleeues of maile, they might mannage their halbards the better, I would for my part allowe them for verie well armed, although I woulde that the piquers because they are the formost rankes should bee in any wise armed with pouldrons, vambraces and gauntlets, as aforelaid, and not with any sleeues of maile. Also I would that the halbarders should weare their swords and daggers of the same length, and in the verie same sort that I haue appointed the armed men piquers. But their halbardes or battleaxes I would haue to be strong and of good waight with long straight edges, with good piques backward, and strong pointes of conuenient length, but in no wise too long forward, and  
that

that they should for the strengthening of them, be armed with two cheekes downe the staffe of a foote and more long, and that such battleaxes, or halbardes for the Squadron should not be aboue 6. foot long from the top of the point to the lowest end of the little iron hoopes commonly called the Feralles of their staues.

Also I would haue certen other halbardes that should be incorporated in euerie band of archers and likewise of harquebuziers, who should serue vpon diuers occasions, to doo execution vpon the enemy: And those Halbarders I would haue them called extraordinarie because they are not for the Squadron; And those I would haue to be armed only with burgonets with collers, verie light Cuirasses and backes, and without any tassels, and instead of pouldrons; vambrases, and gauntlets, the sleeues of their doublets I meane within the fustian striped with certen narrow stripes of serecloth, or of maile, to defend the Cutt of a sword, and if that some of those extraordinarie battleaxes, or halbarders, were armed but only with burgonets and with short skirted Jerkins of buffe, with a double buffe vpon their breasts, and the sleeues of their doublets with stripes of maile or serecloth as aforesaid, and their swordes and daggers worne after th same sort, as the piquers before mentioned, I thinke it allowable: But the staues of the halbards of such halbarders extraordinarie, I would wish to be longer by a foote, or a foote and a halfe or more, then the armed and ordinarie halbardes that are to enter into Squadron, that is of 7. foote and a halfe long, or more, because that they being to succor troupes and societies of loose shot, or to do execution vpon diuers accidents as aforesaid, and often times to fight with the enemy hand to hand, and sometimes to encounter with two, or three against one, it is requisite that their halbards for their aduantage in fig't should be longer then the ordinarie halbardes that are to enter into Squadron; And incase that those halbards were lighter also thē the others that are for the Squadron, being of good strength, it weare not amisse.

But



But whereas I haue before armed all the piquers, and battleaxes ordinarie, I meane, that are to enter into squadron in Corsets complete, and that contrariwise I do vnderstand that diuers of our Captaines of this time when they receaue any English bandes readie armed and furnished to serue withall either in Fraunce, or the Lowe Countries, and that the piquers of those bandes are deliuered vnto them armed in corsets complet all sauing gauntlets; they presentlie giue, or throw awaie all their pouldrons, vambraces and tasses in such sorte as the soldiours doo remaine armed only with burgonets, Collers, Cuirasses and backes, contrarie to all true discipline: Certenly, it seemeth vnto me verie strange, that the lacke of Iudgement, or rather the ignorance of this time in matters Militarie should be so great, that they should contemne the arming of their shoulders, armes, handes, and thighes, and only seeke to garde their breists, bellies and backes, in respect as I doo thinke that they would preferue only those their vital parts: when it is verie well knowne by all experience Militarie, that such as come to be wounded in their shoulders, armes hands or thighes, do oftentimes by such woundes, come to be in their Enemies handes, and mercie, who many times vpon such aduantages do put them to the sword: Besides that it is more then strange that such Captains do not censider that soldiours with their legges and thighes do march forward to incounter with their Enemies, and with their shoulders, armes, and hands, they do vse their weapons and fight with their Enemies; whereas contrariwise with their bellies and backs, (which they altogether seeke to garde) they do neither march forward against the enemies, nor fight: which is a great skorne and mockerie that some of the men of warre of this time should so imitate the French, and Flemish fashions, who of late yeares, haue scarce remained one whole yeare in one order and manner of arming, but haue still chaunged from fashion to fashion. Howbeit such of our Captaines as do contemne the wearing of pouldrons, vambraces, gauntlets, and tasses

do

It is contrary to  
all true discipline  
militarie for sol-  
diors to leaue  
of their poul-  
drons vambraces  
and tasses.

The greatest  
hilles ensuing  
to soldiours by  
leauing of their  
pouldrons vam-  
braces and  
tasses.

doo vaine lie alledge for the reason and excuse of their so dooing; that battles now a daies doo neuer come to ioine, but that they doo onely fight in skirmish; which is a verie vaine conceit and a friuolous excuse, and contrarie to all reason and true experience of diuers battles, that themselves may remember haue beene fought in France, and in diuers other Countries, within these few yeares: considering that whensoever there are two Armies of Enemies in the field, or two puissant powers of horsemen and footmen, and that the one armie or power of them vpon any aduantage or conueniencie of ground espied, shal resolve to giue battle or fight, that the contrarie power or armie shall not be able to refuse the battle, vnlesse they will turne their backs and betake themselves to their heeles; and that by reason that armies when they are in march, cannot assure themselves alwaies to find grounds of such aduantage and strength, wherevpon the enemies resolution to fight they may suddenly intrench, or incampe & fortifie themselves. Besides al which, it is to be noted as *Vigeti*us and diuers other ancient, and more moderne notable historiographers do write, that so long as the *Romanes* did obserue their ancient orders and discipline militarie, they did preuaile against all other Nations; but that as soone as they began through effeminacie to neglect the same, and to leaue the couering and guarding of diuers partes of their bodies with armour in respect of the poise and heueth therof, and other such important matters, that presently their Empire began to decline: in such sort as y<sup>e</sup> *Gothes*, *Vandals*, *Hunnes*, & other septentrional Nations, as also of later years the *Arabians*, and the *Saracens* did chieflie with weapons of vollee, ouerthrow them in many, and manie battles, wherof and of the contempt of their archery insued the losse of a great part of the Romain Empire, and finallie vpon y<sup>e</sup> neglecting & forgetting of the like discipline did likewise ensue y<sup>e</sup> vtter ruine of y<sup>e</sup> two notable christian Empires of *Constantinople* & *Trepisonda* with diuers other christian kingdoms. And thus far concerning the apparelling, arming & weaponing

A verie vaine opinion and friuolous excuse.

The Romaines obseruing their auncient orders and discipline militarie preuailed: but neglecting the same, came to vtter ruine and destruction.

The neglecting of the well arming of themselves with the contempt of archerie were the vtter ruine of the two notable Christian Empires of Constantinople & Trepisonda.

of halbarders, or battleaxes: So as I haue now finished the apparelling, arming, and weaponing of all sortes of foote-men by our Nation in these daies vsed, and therefore I will God willing proceed to the apparelling, arming, weaponing, and horsing of all such different sorts of horsmen, as we now a daies doo vse, with some other such sortes of horsmen also, as I would wish should be in vse and exercise for the defence of the Crowne and Realme, as also for any forren inuasion.

How light horf-  
men should be  
apparellled, ar-  
med, horsed &  
weaponed.

And therefore to begin with light horsmen, such as in diuers shires of england we doo now vse, armed with red or pied cappes and Steele sculles within them, and with Iackes and speares by some called Gads; in stead of this rude kinde of arming as I account it, I would wish that they should bee armed with burgonets, or else with vpright morrions after the Spanish manner, with collers, cuirasses, and backs, and short tassels, and with sleeues of maile and gauntlets, or else gloues of maile in stead of gauntlets; And to the intent they should bee the more easely & fity armed, I would wish that they shuld be apparellled I mean in doublets & Greigescoes, in the very same sort as is before for armed men declared; And as for their speares I would wish them to be of 18. foot long, and those I would wish to bee so long, because they might not only vse them to charge vpon their thighes, but also that they might by taking and houlding them in the midst, vse them in stead of punching staues: And as for their geldings, I would haue them to be of good life and size, and swift of carriere, and that they should ride them with light short checked bittes, according to their horses mouthes, & that their sadles should not bee so little and ill fashioned, as those which we commonly call scottish sadles, but rather that they should bee of that fashion, which wee call now a daies *Morocco* sadles, with pommells of suche conuenient heighth as one single pistoll in a case might bee buckled and set fast to the same, as also that the same should be made fast and buckled athwarte the lower end vpon a little boulder to make it to sit the more firme, and fity vpon all occasions to be



be vsed according to the manner of the Reistres: Also I would that no saddle should be without 3. girthes, and therewithall should haue Patrells, and croupers with the raines and headstalles light and of very good fashion. Besides al this, I would haue those kind of light horsmen to bee verie wel practised in the wel riding and vsing of their horses, and handling of their weapons in euery kind and sort. And thus far concerning that kind of light horsmen. And now to the apparelling, arming, & weaponing of stradiots by me mentioned in my former instructions, and discourses.

Stradiots are a kind of light horsmen that haue been vsed by manie Nations, as well Pagans, as Christians, and haue beene armed and weaponed in diuers different sorts according to the liking of such different Nations: Howbeit according to my opinion and best liking, I would wish those kind of souldiors to be verie well elected and chosen of such men as haue dispositions of bodies and mindes to learne very well to ride, as also to diet, vse, and keepe their horses, & therewithall to learne to handle al their weapons with great dexteritie: And as for their apparel, I meane their arming doublets & hose, I would haue them to be after the verie same sort as I haue appointed vnto other armed men. And I would wish them all to bee armed with good burgoners and buffes, with Collers, with Cuirasses, with backs, and with long Cuisses, from vnder the lowest lam, or skirt of their Cuirasses to vnder the knee, and in stead of pouldrons and vambrases, sleeues of maile compleat, with gloues of maile also, or gauntlets, with all the vpper parts of their thumbs and forefingers of their right handed gauntlets couered with maile, thereby the better to vse their pistols and other weapons; with such good swordes, daggers, and girdles, as I haue before appointed to other armed men, and in stead of Launces or speares, I would wish them to haue Launces commonlie called *Launcezagayas* of good, tite, and stiffe ash, coloured black, with double heads of good and hard temper according to the vse of the Moores, of 18. or 20. foot long; to the intent that taking them in the midst, they may strike both for-

Concerning  
the apparelling,  
arming, horsing  
and weaponing  
of stradiots.

ward and backward, I meane aswell their enemies that they haue in frunt or in flanks, as also their enimies & their horses that may vpon any retrait pursue them: I woulde wish them also to haue horses or geldings, strong, of good size and Carrire, with saddles of the fashion of the Reistres of Saxony, with Croupers, patrels, good headstalles and raines with small chaines, to the intent that if their raines should happen to be cut, they should not be straight at the mercie of their horses, or of their enemies. And I woulde wish them to haue at their saddle pommels very good single pistolles, in good cases well and firmelie sette at their saddles as I haue before mentioned, with touchboxes full of fine powder in some conuenient places about them carried, and with a Cartage boxe of Iron of 7. or 8. cartages fast set vpon euerie pistoll case, and the Cannons of the pistolles ranforced backward, and of small bullet; and of the length of 12. inches, with good firelocks and no snaphaunces, because in true vnderstanding for diuers causes that I could alledge, firelocks are a great deale more certen and of lesse failing then snaphaunces are. Also I woulde that they should haue at their saddle pommels of the contrarie side to the pistolles, men at armes axes; which besides that they are good to fight withall, are verie commodious for horsemen to vse for manie requisit purposes, and vses, which because they are thinges so well knowne to all men of Warre of experience, I omit. And these kind of light horsemen Stradiots thus horsed, armed, and weaponed, are meet for all sorts of skirmishes and incountries, and also are of great execution against harquebuziers and mosquetiers, and to bee brieue against al sortes of horsemen and footmen.

But because their so many weapons, as are before mentioned for one horseman to vse may seeme strange to such of this time as do not loue to trouble themselues but with very few weapons, I say it is no strange matter, considering that such as doo meane to fight wel, do like to haue store of weapons, that in case one or two should faile, they may

may presentlie betake themselves to the choise and vse of others, according to the time and occasion: But such as would thinke those weapons by me before mentioned to be too many for one man to vse, woulde thinke it a great deale more strange, to see a Turky horsman that traueilling by the way doth besides his Cemeterie, and his crooked dagger, voluntarily carrie his Launce, his harquebuz, and his Turkie bowe, with his sheafe of arrowes, with another weapon which now I haue forgot, and all those weapons they doo weare and carie so conuenientlie, and aptlie, as they may vse euery one of them in his most conuenient time and place. And thus far concerning Stradiots. And now concerning dimilaunces.

Dimilaunces are horsemen next in degree and account vnto men at armes, as well in greatnesse, and puissance of horses, as in strong and sure arming; and they ought to be apparelled, as I haue in diuers partes before mentioned. They ought to be armed also, with their helmettes, with their beaues, with their sights not too high nor too lowe, with collers, cuirasses, with rests verie conueniently set not too high nor too low, backs, rasses, & short cuisses too vnder the knee, or else with long Cuisses from vnder the lowest lam of their Cuyrasses to vnder the knee, without rasses. Also they ought to haue good and well compassed pouldrons, vambrases, and gauntlets, and gussets of maile well set for the defence of their armeholes, and their weapons ought to be arming swords, and daggers, worne in good and strong girdles, long, and strong launces, with a curtilace of the one side of the saddle pommell, or a Steele mace, or a man at armes axe on the other side as aforesaid. Howbeit I haue seene some both men at armes, and dimilaunces vse tocks very conueniently worne after the Hungarian & Turkie manner vnder their thighs; which Tocks are long narrow stiffe swords onlie for the thrust: And others I haue seene that instead of Curtilaces & tocks haue worn single pistols, which pistols bicause men at armes or dimilances are to giue their charge in Squadron with the

Concerning  
the apparelling  
arming, horsing  
and weaponing  
of dimilaunces



pointes of their Launces and shooke of their horses, they cannot haue so much leifure to pull out, and to pul downe their cocks, as stradiots and other light horsemen that do fight loose in skirmish or in other little troupes may: Besides that the gauntlets of men at Armes and dimilaunces are not fitlie made to handle pistols in, as all men may see that list to prooue them: and those dimilaunces ought to be all horsed vppon puissant horses for the shooke and not vpon geldings vnlesse they be very puissant; And their furniture for their horses ought to bee steele saddles of good forme, and of a conuenient bignesse, and as light as they conuenientlie may bee made with good headstalles and raines with chaines as afore said; with good patrells and croupers. Also if there were any gentlemen in those bands of dimilaunces, I would wish them not to bee without the forepart of steele barbes, to the intent that vppon any day that were likelie to be of great seruice against the enemy, they should arme and barbe the forepart of their horses, because that they being placed in the first rank, or two ranks, should bee the better able to giue and receiue the charge and shooke with the lesse daunger to their horses. And thus far for dimilaunces.

Men at armes  
out of vse in  
Christendome.

Now as for men at Armes because all men that are of any experience and vnderstanding in matters militarie, doo well know that they must bee all armed, *cap a pie*, and their horses verie puissant, and all barbed aswell behind as before, with the number of weapons that they ought of ordinary to weare and vse: And because that in these daies partlie in respect of their great pay; but chiefly because the art and science militarie hath beene of late years, and presentlie is in great declination and decaie, they are not in vse in England, nor in any part of Christendome as they haue beene, I ouerpasse them.

But now it is likely enough that some Gentlemen that haue beene trained vp in these late Ciuill wars of the Low Countries or France may thinke that I haue forgotten my selfe in not making mention in these afore said musters, of  
Carabins

Carabins or Argolettiers; vnto which kinde of horsemen they are greatly affected: Whereunto I say that for the smalle effect that by experience I haue scene those Carabins in seruices worke, through their great and manie failings, which I haue sufficientlie proued in the latter end of my booke of discourses that I did set forth, and cause to be printed the yeare 1590. as also in the former discourses of this booke, where I haue written of them; I doo not any waies hold them worthie to be compared in their effects neither to archers on horsebacke, nor Crosbrowsers on horsebacke; and therefore will in this place make but very small mention of them, but do in stead of them, wish that there should be an election and inrollement made of certain archers and Crosbrowsers on horsebacke in euery shire who should be armed weaponed and horsed, and reduced into ~~their~~ bands vnder their Captains and leaders, as here in this place I will out of my former booke sette downe againe, and that is in this sorte following.

An objection  
answered.

All the Crosbrowsers on horsbacke vnder sufficient Conductors well skilled in the weapon, I would they should haue Crosbowes of two pound and a halfe of the best sort, with crooked gaffes hanging at their strong girdles after the manner of *Germanie*, that they might on horsebacke bend their Crosbowes the more easilie and readilie with 24. quarrels in a case, well, fitlie, and firmelie sette at their saddle pommels, and mounted vpon good colde geldings, of meane size, the selfes armed with good morrions of the spanish fashion vpon their heads, Collers, light, and short wasted Cuirasses, and backes, with sleeues of maile, or their doublet sleeues chained with maile, betwixt the lining and outside of their said sleeues; or with certain narrow stripes of serecloth within their sleeues, as aforesaid; or else that they should be armed with morrions, light and easie brigandines, and sleeues chained with maile, with broade short swordes by their sides of not aboue a yard in length, and short daggers. The archers on horsebacke vnder their Captaines or conductors skilfull in archerie, I would

How Cros-  
browsers on hors  
backe should  
be horsed, ar-  
med, and wea-  
poned.

would likewise haue mounted vpon good quiet geldings of mean size with deepe steele sculles in very narrow brimmed hattes, well stuffed for the easines of their heades: or rather with certen light morrions of some gallant fashion inuented and deuised for them; and either Iacks of maile according to the auncient manner when they were called *Loricati Sagittarij*, or else light and easie brigandines, or at least llet holed doublets, verie easie and well fitted to their bodies; their sleeues chained within with maile, or else with certen narrow stripes of serecloth betwixt the lining and outside of their sleeues for the easines of their armes; with broad short swordes and short daggers, their bowes of good yewgh, long, and well nocked and backed, and all their stringes well whipt, with sheafes of .24. arrowes a peece in cases, with shooting gloues and bracers after the manner of our archers in times past. And all these both archers & crosbowers I would haue them to be well practised, that they might know how to discharge their arrowes and quarrells galloping vpon the hand and in al other motions of their horses, and the Crosbowers to bend againe with great readines, and diuers bands being thus horsed, armed, weaponed, and exercised, as also reduced into bands of fifties vnder sufficient conductors and other officers skilfull in those weapons, should in mine opiniõ be able to performe far greater seruice in y<sup>e</sup> field either against horsemen or footmen, then any of the forenamed weapons of fire on horsebacke: Considering that both archers and Crosbowers may with their arrowes and quarrels verie certenlie wound or kill in their points and blanks either horsemen or footmen, that are in squadron, or troupe. 2. or 3. skores of, and rouing 6. 7. or 8. skores or a great deale further may greatlie mischiefe and annoie any squadron either of horsemen or footmen: whereas the Argolettiers or Pistolettiers are not to worke any effect against squadrons or troupes of horsemen or footmen about 10. or 15. yardes off, at the furdest, and if it be enemie to enemie single, then they are not to discharge their peeces about 4. or 5. yardes off;

Crosbowers & archers on horseback of greater seruice then weapons of fire on horsebacke.



off; vnles they wil faile 5. times, before they hit once, so vn-  
certaine are those weapons of fire: The iudgement wher-  
of because this mine opinion may seeme strange to such as  
doo not know the imperfections of those weapons of fire  
on horsebacke, I refer vnto any Captaines or conductors  
of those weapons, either Italians, Spaniards, Wallouns, or  
French, that are souldiors of experience and iudgement.

But now because I haue diuers times seene new bandes  
of diuers sortes of horsmen verie sleightlie mustered, as wel  
beyond the seas, as also in England, I thinke it good in this  
place brieflie to write with what curiositie I woulde wish  
musters of bandes of horsmen and footmen for the de-  
fence of the Realme to be taken: And therefore I say, that  
I would wish that the Mustermaister of horsmen & foot-  
men of euery shire, should bee a knight or an Esquire of  
great worship of the same shire, or some other shire next  
adioyning, and such a one as had serued in some warre or  
warres in former times, and therefore of some good expe-  
rience in matters militarie, who in respect of his good cal-  
ling and worship would haue speciall care to the good and  
faithfull seruice of the king and Realme, without any waies  
abusing the performance of his dutie in those seruices, as  
most of the common Mustermaisters of this time do; who  
being either Captaines newlie come vppe and of small ac-  
count, or else such as haue beene souldiors and officers of  
bandes, and now retainers and seruants to Noblemen, and  
doo procure and sue for such offices, rather to haue ordi-  
narie and yearely stipendes at the charge of the shires, as  
also by diuers other waies and meanes to make their vn-  
lawfull gaines and profits of the subiectes (then any waies  
to perform their duties in taking right and skilful musters,  
and reforming of militarie lackes and imperfections) doo  
wittinglie and willinglie in respect of gaine worke but very  
little good effect in those employments.

And because al the bands of horsmen of euerie shire are  
composed of knights, of gentlemē's, & of yeomens seruāts  
and that betwixt musters and musters they doo sometimes

With what curi-  
ositie musters  
of bands of  
horsmen, and  
footmen ought  
to be taken.

Of what calling  
the muster-  
maister of eue-  
ry shire should  
bee.

change by putting out of their seruice, or otherwise, their men that are inrolled into the bands of horsemen, wherof it commeth to passe that sometimes a meane man of stature, putteth on a tall mans armor, and sometimes a taller man putteth on the armour of a man of smaller stature, in such sort as many of them are very vnfitlie and vneasily armed, and as vnskillfull in souldiorlie wearing, and vsing of their weapons, and altogether ignorant to ride, handle, & vse their horses: and that armed men being on horseback may seeme to bee conuenientlie apparelled and armed, when if they were a foot they would shew to be far otherwise; I would therefore that euerie such principall Gentleman Mustermaster should in calling ouer of euery horseman by name in order as they are in his muster roll set downe, make euery one of them in order as they are called one after another to alight a foot, and to view euery horseman well, whether hee haue an arming doublet fit for his armour or no, and whether both the armour and doublet be fit for the man, and whether there bee any buckles, or leathers broken, or any peece, or peeces lacking; none of the which particular lackes are sufferable.

Then he is to peruse whether he haue all the weapons belonging to horsemen of his sort, as if he be a dimilaunce with such weapons as I haue before particularlie named that do belong to a dimilaunce; and if he be a stradiot, then the Mustermaister is to view him a foote as aforesaid, to see whether his apparell and armor be fitte for his person, and therewithall aptly and soldiorlie worne, as also whether he haue all his weapons belonging vnto horsemen of his sorte, and whether they bee good, and that he doth weare them aptly and soldiorly, yea he ought to view how he doth weare his hosen and Greigescoes, bootehosen, bootes and spurres, and whether he doth weare them aptly and fitly like a horseman or like a Clowne: And in case there be any imperfections or imperfection in any of those particularities, he is presentlie to giue order vpon some conuenient penaltie according to the default or imperfection

The order that all muster maisters are to vse in mustering of their bands of horsemen.

tion to be imposed vpon the partie that doth set forth the horse and horseman, that the same with al speede by a certain prefixed day be supplied or amended; Then he is to view his horse, and euerie part of the furniture of his horse to see whether there be any lacke, vnfitnesse, or imperfection in any part of the same, or whether his horse since the last muster hath bene chaunged, or whether since that time he hath by misusage bene broken winded or made lame; and therefore it behoueth the Mustermaster to haue a skilfull Ferrar with him at his taking of Musters, that can with skill Iudge of their lamenesse or soundnesse. All which performed, then the Mustermaster must command the horsman to mount on horseback, and to put his horse orderlie into his Carrire, and to charge his staffe presentlie and soldiorlie from his thigh into his rest if he be a launce, and not as they doo commonlie vse to carrie their staues at the tilt to beautifie their courses, as is before declared, and againe at the end of his Carrire to discharge the same, and to set it againe vpon his thigh and to stoppe and turne his horse both of the right and lefte hand; and if he be a Stradiot, after that he is remounted againe on horseback he is to commaund him to gallop the field as if he were in skirmish, and to vse his double headed Launcegaie in striking both forward and backward, as also on euerie side, as though he were in action with his enemy, and suddenly to cast frō him his double headed Launce, as if the same were broken, or by some accident lost, and to draw his pistoll, and pull downe the Cocke, and discharge the same, and presentlie againe to pull vp the cocke, and to thrust it into his case, and to draw his sword, or to handle some other weapon of his with dexteritie; which being soldiorlike performed, he is to be allowed to passe the muster for a sufficient soldior: but in case his horse be restie or headstrong, such a horse how sound soeuer, is not to be allowed, vnlesse he may in short time be reformed. And so likewise if he be an archer, or Crosbower on horsebacke, he must verie particulerlie view, and see; whether his apparell, armor and

*Mustermasters are to see that the horsemen can well vse their horses and weapons,*



weapons with all other furniture belonging to the same, bee all in as great, or greater order and perfection then I haue before particularlie set downe: and so likewise hee is verie curioulie to view euerie one of their horses that they be of conuenient age, and size, and sound of wind and lim, as also whether their saddles, bridles, bittes, pattrels, and croupers, and other furniture be in perfection.

All which beeing by the mustermaister throughoutlie viewed and found in order and perfection, then hee is to command the archer to mount on horsebacke, and to galloppe vpon the hand, and passing by some marke set vp in the fielde, to drawe 2. or 3. arrowes out of his sheafe one after another, and drawing euerie one of them to the head, to discharge them at the same marke, some 3. or 4. scores off; which being by him souldiorlike performed, he is to allow him for a sufficient soldior and archer on horsback; & so al other archers that he shall muster & find to be armed, horsed, weaponed and furnished, and of sufficiencie as aforesaid. And so likewise, hauing viewed, and perused euerie Crosbower on horseback, with all their armor, Weapons and furniture, as also their horses with all other furniture belonging to them, and finding them all in perfection, then hee is likewise to commaund the Crosbower to mount on horsback, and to gallop vpon the hande, and in passing by to discharge a quarrell at some mark set vp some 30. paces off, and againe presentlie with his gaffe to bend his crosbow and to discharge a second quarrell at that or some other marke; which being by him, and al other crosbowers orderlie and souldiorlike performed; then he is to allow them to passe the muster as sufficient souldiors, and so likewise he ought to allowe the Archers beeing in such perfection as aforesaid.

The reducing  
of bands into  
one or diuers  
formes apper-  
taineth to the  
Captaine and  
not to the mus-  
termaister.

And in this curious sort a Mustermaister is to take the view and Muster of euerie different sort, and kinde of horsemen; For as for reducing any number of them into any forme or formes with many other particularities. those things doo apperteine to their Captaines, and higher and  
lower

lower officers; and so likewise the mustering of them in such curious sort as aforesaid, doth appertain also vnto euery good and careful Captain, that dooth desire to haue his band in good order. But because some such gentlemen as are appointed Captains of horsemen and footmen for the defence of the Realm, are for lack of skil or care, not so curious in hauing their bands in order as they ought to bee: therfore the forsaide knight or principal gentleman that is appointed to take musters, shoulde at certen conuenient times in the yeare, when al sorts of men are at most leisure from their country affaires & busines, muster them in conuenient places, some at one time and some at another, to see y they should be alwaies in order, to be employed for y defence of their Prince, and country: & should also in calling them ouer one after another by his muster roll, bee as curious in viewing not onlie the sufficiencie of the person of euery soldior, whether he be any waies by any accident decayed since his first election & inrolment: but also should very curiously view y fitnes of his apparell and armor, least that since the first election and inrolment, or since the last musters, the man, his apparel, or armour had beene changed. Then he is to view his weapons, and y apt and fit wearing of them, & whether both armor & weapons be clean and neat, and in such perfection as I haue before very particularly set down, in the election, apparelling, arming and weaponing of al sorts of footmen by vs in these daies vsed: and in case that he doth find any abuses, lacks, or imperfections in any of the particularities aforesaid, or any other, he is presently to giue order for the reforming of the same by a prefixed day vpon some seuerer penalty to be imposed either vpon the parish that hath set forth that souldior, or vpon the priuate rich man that dooth finde and set forth the same souldior, or vpon the Souldior himselfe, in case he be of that wealth that he is at his owne arming, and furnishing.

When muster-  
maisters are to  
take their  
muster.

Mustermaisters  
finding any a-  
buses, lacks, or  
imperfections,  
are to giue or-  
der that the  
same be reme-  
died, vpon some  
seuerer penaltie  
to be imposed  
vpon the party  
vnto whome  
the same doth  
appertaine.

Also wheras such soldiors either horsemen or footmen

The order that  
is to be vsed for  
the supplying  
of soldiors mai-  
med, or mischie-  
ued, or othe-  
wise decaied.

as are inrolled in such bands as afore said, do somtimes be-  
come so maimed or mischieued by some accidental chaū-  
ces that they shall neuer be after able effectually to vse such  
weapons as they were inrolled vnto, or that by long sick-  
nes they are so decayed as they are not likely in a long time  
or neuer to recouer their forces therby soldiorlike to weare  
their armors, and vse their weapons; Vpon those and other  
like causes and accidents I would wish that the parish that  
doth find such soldiors, or else the priuate rich men, in case  
they be set forth and found by them, should presently noti-  
fie the same vnto y<sup>e</sup> captain vnder whom & in whose band  
the said soldior or soldiors do serue, & that they should with-  
in a certen and a prefixed day after, present vnto him three  
other allowable, & able men, alreadie from their youth ex-  
ercised, in case they be archers, or apte and willing to learn  
to be soldiors, in case they bee of other weapons, to the in-  
tent that the captaine should to his best liking, make choice  
of one of them to be inrolled and supplie the place of the  
soldior maimed or by long sicknesse decaied.

The order that  
is to be vsed for  
the supplying  
of any soldiors  
deceased, or de-  
parting from  
their habita-  
tion into some  
other 'roune or  
hundred, or  
out of their  
maisters ser-  
uice.

Also in case that the soldior, or soldiors of any band or  
bands of horsmen or footmen should happen to die, or vp-  
on occasion of newe habitation, should remoue out of the  
parish or hundred, wheras he at his first inrolment did inha-  
bit, or that any seruauant, or seruingman inrolled to any wea-  
pon to serue on horseback, should depart out of his maisters  
seruice; that in those and other like cases, the parishes vpon  
the death of any such soldior or soldiors, should presently  
notifie the same vnto his or their captaine or captains, and  
should within a certen prefixed daie after, present vnto him  
3. other able and sufficient men to make his choice of one  
of them, to serue with the armor and weapons of the party,  
or parties deceased. But in case that such a soldior or soldior  
either horsman or footman should vpon the accasion  
of inhabiting else where, depart out of the Townes where  
they before had inhabited, or bene resident, or that such  
souldiors had departed out of their maisters seruices to  
serue elsewhere, as afore said: then I would in those or any  
the



the like cases, that either the parish where such souldiors did dwell, or the maisters of such seruantes should signifie their intention of remouing and departure of such souldiors, vnto their Captaines, a full moneth before their departure, and that they should either 15. or 10. daies before their departure at the least, present vnto him 2. or 3. verie able men, of the which he may make choice of one to be intolled and to serue and supplie in the place of such a souldior remouing.

And whereas all the armors and weapons of the souldiors footmen are at this time placed diuersly in al the shires of England, in such partes whereas there are inrolmentes of horsemen and footemen, as in some places that they are placed in the chiefe Towne or Townes of the shire, and in other places in the Captaines, or other gentlemens houses, and in other partes that al the Corporals haue the custodie of all the armor and weapons that doo belong to the corporolates or societies that are vnder their charge; and all this vnder pretence for the more safe, and clean, and neat keeping of them, as also to take awaie the opportunities of the peoples sudden arming of themselves in case they should take armes, the same beeing alreadie in their houses, with intention to reuolt, and rebell. Therevnto I say, that it is not the keeping or placing of the armour and weapons of a shire or diuers shires, heere or there out of the souldiors handes as aforesaid, that can keepe them, or a people disposed to rebell, from rebelling, if the souldiors oathes of fidelitie at their first election and inrolments will not restraine and conteine them; by reason that rebellions doo begin so diuerslie, and vpon so many prepenesed or accidentall opportunities, as they cannot be any waies preuented by such poore deuises.

For as rebellions in diuers Empires, kingdomes and Common wealthes haue begun vpon the ambition or discontentation of some Noble man, or Noblemen for wronges and iniustices at their princes handes receiued, that doo confederate together, or otherwise resolute to take

Armes

The diuersitie of the placing of the souldiors armors and weapons, in all the shires of England.

Not the placing of armors nor weapons here, nor there that can keepe a people disposed to rebell from rebellion.

Rebellions begin sometimes vpon the ambition or discontentacion of some noble man, or noble men.

**Armes against the Prince:** Vpon such conspiracies, or resolutions I say, it is not the placing of armor or weapons, heere or there in shires, that can keepe the same out of the handes of them, and the people that follow them, the reuolt and rebellion being once begun, but the armor being placed in great Townes vnfortified, as all our Townes of England are, those armors and weapons being in such Townes vnfortified kepte, are a great deale the more readie to arme and weapon a great multitude reuolted all at one time, then if they were dispersed in the soldiours custodies and houses to whome they belong, to serue withall, throughout such a whole Shire or diuers Shires. So sometimes also rebellions do happen through the discontentation of the *Ignobile vulgus*, or common people, and those most commonly do begin in great Townes vpon the assembling of many people, as of faires, markets, and other such assemblies of people, so as great quantitie of armor, and weapons being kepte in such great Townes, they are the more readie for the people reuolting to possesse themselves of them. And so likewise, armors & weapons, being placed either in the Captaines or Corporalls houses, they are a great deale more readie vpon a rebellion by the common people begon, to be by them taken to arme themselves withall, then if they were dispersed into all the soldiours houses vnto whome they belong to serue withall for defence of the Realme, according to their oathes, throughout a whole shire. But in case that the rebellion be vniuersall throughtout one, or diuers whole shires, then it cannot be avoided but that wherefoeuer the armor and weapons of such shires are placed, they will presentlie possesse themselves of them.

And in case that all the armor and weapons not only of a few shires, but of all the kingdome, were taken out of all the shires throughout, and were placed in some place, or places well fortified, and vnder great garrison to be the more safelie and surelie kept: I say that the same out of the handes of the people without other preuention, can no

waies

Armors placed in great townes are more ready to arme an vnuly multitude, then if they were dispersed in the soldiours houses.

Rebellions do often happen vpon the discontentation of the ignobile vulgus

The or  
is to be  
the sup  
of soldi  
med, or  
ued, or  
wise de

The or  
is to be  
the sup  
of any  
deceat  
partin  
their  
tion in  
other  
hund  
out of  
maillte  
rice.

waies hinder nor keepe a common people from rebellion that are disposed to rebell, considering that according to *Virgill. Furor arma ministrat*; as it may be apparant, by the *Bellum seruile*, that hapned against the Romaines in all their greatnesse, which consisted most of slaues, and bondmen, hauing one *Spartacus* a Fenser, and other Fensers for their Chieftaines, who at y<sup>e</sup> beginning of their reuolt had but verie few or no armors and weapons of warre, but such as their rage and furie taught them to inuent, take, and vse, and so likewise the common people of the kingdome of Hongarie, and the peasants termed in the French Cronicles, the Iaccarie of Fraunce when they first reuolted and tooke Armes against the Nobilitie of those kingdoms were vtterly disarmed, and all the Nobilitie of those Kingdomes verie notable armed, both for on horsbacke and on foote; and yet after the rebellion was once begun, those common people presentlie inuented & forged both armor and weapons of warre in great numbers both offensive and defensive, and in short time reduced themselves into so great strength, as before that they could be vtterlie suppressed, it cost the liues of a great parte of the Nobilitie and gentlemen of those kingdomes: Notwithstanding that both those kingdomes, I meane Fraunce and Hongarie had many Cities, and Townes so well fortified for the Kinges and Nobilitie to make their retraites into, as the pesantes hadde neuer the skill nor power to possesse themselves of, which the Realme of England hath not.

*Bellum seruile* that happened to the romains when they flourished most, begun and maintained by *Spartacus* & other fencers.

The daungerous rebellion of the peasants of hongary and fraunce, who at the first had little or no armors.

And so likewise if we list to looke vpon the Rebellions of the common people that happened in diuers partes of England in one somer in kinge Edward the sixthes time, and chieflie the Rebellion vnder *Kette* in Norffolke it is most apparant, that at the first begining of the Rebellion they had verie little, or no armor, and verie few weapons of warre, but that in a verie short time after that they

The rebellions of the common people of England and specially the rebellion vnder *Ket* in Norffolke that had at the first little or no armor.

Ec

had



had begun their rebellion, they did inuent, forge, & make manie weapons of warre, in the which for a time vntil they were suppressed, they behaued themselues in terrible sort; And of later time within these 24. or 25. years, the Moores of the kingdome of *Granada* in Spaine that was a people vtterlie disarmed and without weapons and exercises of warre, did in al the greatnesse of king *Philip* of Spaine that nowe is, reuolt; and making of necessitie vertue, did first betake themselues to fight with stones, and a few weapons that they had long before got by stealth and hidde in their houses: But after that their rebellion was begun, they in a very short time, did inuent, and forge, and winne by force of the Spaniards Christians great numbers of armors and weapons both offensive and defensive, and did so resist, preuaile, and defend themselues against the king of Spains powers sent against them, that it was more then two years after the first beginning of the Rebellion, ere it could bee suppressed; in which space, it cost y liues of about 50000. Spaniardes: Amongst which number, there were manie principall Gentlemen, and Captaines of good account flaine.

By all which examples before rehearsed with many others, as all men that haue read and obserued many histories doo well knowe, it is most apparant, that it is not the placing of the armor and weapons, here or there, or the disarming of the comon people, as the peasants in France, and Hongarie, and the Moores in Spaine were disarmed, that can preuent Rebellions that doo happen and are begun vpon diuers occasions, and chieffie for lack of iustice dylie and equallie ministred: Howbeit Iustice duly & with great equalitie and order ministred throughout a whole Empire, kingdome, or common wealth, with great care had to protect, preserue, maintaine, increase and continue the Common wealth of the subiectes in al prosperitie, and by aduancing and fauouring the good, and by reproching and punishing the bad: the same I say, how wel armed soeuer the subiects and people are, dooth take awaie all occasions

The reuolt of the disarmed mores of *Granada* against king *Philip* of Spaine in al his greatnes which was in the yeare 1568.

Iustice dylie & equallie ministred doth take away al occasions and intentions of rebellion.

The o  
is to b  
the su  
of sole  
med, c  
ued, o  
wise d

The o  
is to l  
the st  
of any  
dece:  
partii  
their  
tion  
other  
hund  
out o  
maist  
rice.

casions and intentions of rebellion, as it is most apparant by the notable Cirtie, and state of *Venice*, and their dominions in the continent and Ilands that doo belong to that seniorie; which haue beene euer in many ages so well armed, as in *Venice* it selfe, the common multitude of the Citizens and people, who neuer beare any office in the common wealth, but certen base offices, doo so well content themselues with the gouernment, and great and equal iustice of the Magistrates and their superiors; that although they haue all sortes of armors, and weapons of warre for footmen in all their houses; yet it is not to be found in any Chronicles or histories of *Venice*, that euer they did take armes or reuolt against their Duke, *Senate*, nor Nobilitie: And that in like sort, al the dominions that do belong vnto *Venice*, that are in the continent of Italie and elsewhere, although all the common people of those dominions, bee armed and weaponed; yet through the great care had by the state of *Venice* of their prosperitie, with equall & great iustice ministred euen to the very least of them; they finde themselues so well contented to liue vnder the quiet and happie gouernment of the *Venetians*, that they haue not in many and many yeares, once offred any kinde of reuolt against them; but haue rather at such times as some parts of those dominions haue beene by force wonne and possessed, sometimes by the Imperiall, and somtimes by the French and other Princes, at one time or other reuolted from the gouernment of such straungers, and returned againe to the obedience of the *Venetians*.

The quiet and happie state of the *Venetians* these many hundred years, caused by Iustice.

Besides which, it is to be noted, that the *Cantonnes* and confederate people of *Switzerland*, since they through the great extortions and iniustices of the Dukes of *Austridge* and their officers and substitutes, did take armes, and by battle and victorie (with the death of the Duke *Lupold*, and slaughter of a great part of his Nobilitie) redeeme and reduce themselues into a ciuill and popular State, haue neuer reuolted; nor that the people of certen principalities of Germanie through the great iustice by their princes

The force of Iustice duly & equally ministred amongst the *Swissers* and diuers other principalities of Germanie.

and Magistrats equallie ministred, and the well ordering & vsing of the people, haue at any time rebelled: I mean the *Swissers* against their Magistrates, nor those *Almaines* against their princes. By which examples with manie others, which for breuities sake I omit; this old prouerbe is verified, *Opus Iustitie pax*; which may be interpreted, that the effect of iustice is peace.

Princes that do duely & equally minister iustice need not to doubt any rebellion.

A thing most requisite for all Emperors kings and common wealthes to well arme, weapon and exercise their subiects.

Where all the armors and weapons of all shires should be kept.

From all which I come to conclude, that no Emperor, King, nor Common wealth that doo gouerne their Subiectes with great and equall iustice, and therewithall doo effectuellie shew to haue great care of their increase, prosperity and happinesse, need any waies to doubt any reuolt or Rebellion against them, by their subiectes and people, although they haue al sorts of armors and weapons of war in their houses; but that it is rather verie requisite & needfull for all great Princes and Common Wealthes, that wil maintaine and defend themselues and their dominions against forren Nations, to well arme, weapon, and exercise their people in matters militarie; and that they doo establish good Lawes for the good and orderlie perfourmance of the same. All which before considered, mine opinion clearelie is, that of all other places it is most conuenient, that the armours and Weapons of all Shieres should be kept by such rich men as doo finde those armors and weapons, in their owne houses; and such as are found by the common purse of parishes, that they should be kept in the chiefe mens houses of those parishes where the soldiours dwell; that vpon occasion of those seruices should weare and vse them, aswell in respect that all men by all reason will be more carefull to keepe and maintain in good order such apparell, armor and weapons as were bought at their owne charges, then great Townes, or Gentlemen, or Corporalles, that neuer bought the same: Besides that vpon any sudden alarum, or giuing of fire to the beacons vpon the enemies comming to inuade, or other occasion of seruice, when the souldiours of the whole shire, shoulde with al celeritie arme themselues & march to the place of  
assem-



assembly generall, there to reduce themselves vnder their Ensignes, and Captains, and vnder their higher and lower officers; I say that all sortes of souldiours may presentlie, and with a great deale more celeritie, apparell, arme and weapon themselves in warrelike manner, the same beeing in their owne houses, if they be owners of the same, or otherwise presentlie to apparell arme and weapon themselves in such houses of the same Towne whereas the furniture is kept, and themselves doo dwell, then to runne to Gentlemens or Corporalles houses, or to great townes 3. or 4. miles off; where their armors & furniture are kept, & there in hubbled shuffe disorderlie to arme themselves; wherof, besides diuers other disorders that do ensue often times vpon such sudden Alarmes, and armings, little men doo put on great or tall mens armors, and leaue litle armors vnfit for great men to put on; according to the olde saying, first come first serued; And so likewise they do mistake the right choosing of their apparell and Weapons; whereof inseweth great disorder and confusion. And these sudden disorders with others that I omit, cannot vpon such sudden alarmes be possible preuented, the armors & weapon being so placed, although al the particuler names of the soldiours, were written vpon the apparel, armor & weapons. And now as I haue set downe mine opinion concerning y<sup>e</sup> election and enrolling aswel of diuers sorts of horsemen as of footmen, to diuers different sorts of armors and weapons with many other particularities: So would I now wish (al matters military being brought into the perfectiō aforesaid) that all the souldiours aswell horsemen as footmen, should in som conuenient place appointed for y<sup>e</sup> purpose, vpon the holidiaies, during certen moneths in y<sup>e</sup> summer, in the afternoone after they come from church, exercise themselves with such weapons as they are inrolled vnto, as archers to shoot in game at Rouers, & long butts, with their long bowes, according to the ancient vse of England, and that the harquebuziers in the presence of the chiefe men or officers of y<sup>e</sup> parish in traueßing their grounds as if they

When and how  
soldiours that  
are enrolled to  
any kind of wea  
pon ought to  
exercise them  
selves.

were in skirmish, should with their peeces well, and orderly charged (as I haue in my instructions and discourses before particularly declared) at a great But discharge 4. shot; and so likewise that the mosquetiers should with their mosquets well charged with full bullets from their restes, discharge 3. or 4. other shot: And this at the charge either of the parishes, or of such rich men as doo find such soldiours, or otherwise as it may be better considered of, and deuised. Also I would that such soldiours as are piquers, being disarmed should with blunt piques, learne to march soldiourly, as also with dexteritie to handle and manage them, thereby the better to know how in seruice to handle their sharpe piques; as also the halbarders with blunt halbardes made for the purpose, should learne to giue both blow and thrusts at their enemies with their greatest aduantage: Howbeit as for halbarders and piquers there is no neede that they should be so often exercised to the vse of their weapons as the soldiours with weapons of volec; because that soldiours with weapons of volec, be they horsemen or footmen shal neuer be able effectually to performe the vse and effects of their weapons in seruices of the field in earnest, if they be not often and long before exercised in sporte with dexteritie to mannage and vse those weapons. And so likewise vpon such aforesaid holidayes, I would wish that all sorts of horsemen of what weapon soeuer, should either before their maisters or some other principall men where they dwel, appointed for that purpose, ride their horses, and exercise themselues on horsebacke, with such weapons as they are inrolled vnto. And all these aforesaid priuate exercises vpon holidayes I would wish to be performed to the intent to make all the soldiours of all sorts of armors and weapons as well on horseback as on foote to be the more apte, & ready to performe the effects of soldiours vpon all important employments and seruices Militarie, as also at such generall musters, and trainings as should be appointed, & thought requisite vpon some two speciall times in the sommer, when the peo-

peo-

The  
is to  
the  
of  
med  
ued,  
wife

The  
is to  
the  
of a  
dec  
part  
thi  
tion  
oth  
hun  
our  
mai  
rice

*enrolling and Mustring.*

ple might haue best leifure to be absent from their most needefull and necessarie Countrie affaires.

Also I would that no horsemen, nor footmen to what armor and weapon soeuer they bee inrolled, should alter or chaunge themselves from the same kinde of armors and weapons that he or they are inrolled vnto vpon verie seuerer punishment, without the special appointment of their Captain, or Capitaines; and therefore it is verie conuenient that al Captains aswell of horsemen as footmen should euer haue all their officers of their bandes alwaies ready & wel known to their whole bands, as also the whole bands vnto them: as their Lieutenantes, their Ensignebearers, their Sergeants: And that all those officers should be men of credite and account, and inhabiteurs in the same shires, and that al those officers should haue the muster Rolles of the names of all the souldiors with their different weapons that they are inrolled vnto, in as great perfections as the Capitaines: that thereby, as also for diuers other causes they should haue a continual eie that the souldiors of their bands should not through any kinde of negligence grow into any imperfections, or disorders; And therewithall that the Corporals of the footmen, who should haue 50. souldiors vnder their seuerall charges, (their own persons in that number contained) should neuer be without a perfect Roll of the particular names of the souldiors of their Corporalates, and to what armor and weapons euery souldior is inrolled, and where they dwell: And therewithall that they should haue speciall care, to see and diligently to inquire, whether the souldiors of their charge and Corporalates do vpon such holidiaies as aforelaid, exercise themselves with their weapons, in the Townes, parishes, hamlets, or places where they are ordinarilie resident, as also that at conuenient times they should see whether their arming apparell, armors and weapons be well and orderlie kept without any thing lacking: And for the orderlie obseruation and performance of all the most requisit matters by me before set downe, as also others that haue ne-

No  
for  
alter  
their  
vpon  
were  
pun-  
ment.

The office  
al bands  
to be well  
knowne to  
souldiors of  
bands & the  
bands to the



present fallen into my remembrance, or that may  
be better considered of and deuised by others of greater  
memorie and consideration then I am of, I would wish  
they should be with great consideration & aduise of coun-  
sell propounded, considered of, and established by Act of  
Parliament with certen different penalties for the reform-  
ing of the neglecters of such requisite matters militarie,  
as also certen priuiledges, preheminences, or other ad-  
uancements, as rewards for vertue, to be bestowed vpon  
such as doo best, or verie well behaue themselves in their  
vocations, and degrees militarie.

And thus hauing for the great loue that I beare to the  
continuell safetie and prosperity of the Crowne & Realme  
of England, and English Nation, performed and finished  
my intended propositions and proiects militarie, I cease,  
attributing all such matters as I haue rightly fallen into the  
reckoning of, to the most high praise, honor and glorie, of  
Almightie God, (as the only giuer of all right vnderstan-  
ding, wisdom and science) and all my failings and errors  
vnto mine owne great lacke and fault, in that I haue not  
giuen and yeeldeu my selfe as I ought to haue doon, to his  
deuine grace, and direction; thereby to haue considered,  
learned, and obserued more of the Art, and science Mili-  
tarie, and of all other good thinges; then my simple capa-  
citie and power, by seeing, reading, and hearing hath been  
any waies able to attaine vnto.

*Honor et gloria in excelsis Deo  
omnipotenti, sempiterno, et  
incomprehensibili  
Amen.*

